ŠKODA

ŠKODA Octavia Owner's Manual

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index
The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

- Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
- ■ Denotes the end of a section.
- ▶ Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
- STOP Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Denotes a registered trademark.
- i Denotes the display in the information display.
- S Denotes the display in the segment display.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.
You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. The new operating concept allows you to make vehicle settings and to operate electronic systems centrally from the Infotainment system.

In addition to this Owner's Manual, please also carefully read the Infotainment operating manual, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

Observe the national legal requirements when using your vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

On-board literature
The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this "**owner's manual**" as well as a "**service schedule**" and the "**Help on the road**" brochure.

Depending on the vehicle model and equipment, other additional operating manuals and instructions may be provided (e.g. an operating manual for the Infotainment Radio).

If one of the documents listed above is missing, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- "Specialist garage" - a company that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles
- "ŠKODA service partner" - a company that is contractually authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. to carry out service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles
- "ŠKODA Partners" - a company that is authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. to sell ŠKODA products or carry out service work, or to carry out these tasks in parallel

The owner's manual
This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, this vehicle **does not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this owner's manual.

The scope of equipment in your vehicle relates to your sales contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner where you bought the vehicle.

This owner's manual describes a wide range of electronic functions and systems. Information about how to configure these electronic functions and systems can be found in the operating instructions to Infotainment Radio and/or the Infotainment navigation system.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

The service schedule:
- Contains vehicle data including information on service work carried out;
- Is intended as proof of services carried out;
- Is intended for records relating to the mobility warranty (only valid for some countries);
- Serves as a warranty certificate from the ŠKODA Partner where your vehicle was purchased.

Therefore please always present the service schedule when you take your vehicle to a specialist garage.

If the service schedule is missing or in poor condition, please contact the specialist garage that regularly services your vehicle. You will need to request a duplicate, in which the specialist garage will confirm the service work previously carried out.

The Help on the Road brochure
The brochure contains the important emergency telephone numbers as well as telephone numbers and contact addresses of ŠKODA Partners in different countries.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Using the system

Cockpit 7
Overview 6

Instruments and warning lights 9
Instrument cluster 9
Warning lights 14
Warning icons in the display 20

Information system 25
Driver information system 25
Driving data (Multifunction display) 28

Unlocking and opening 32
Unlocking and locking 32
KESSY 38
Anti-theft alarm system 39
Luggage compartment lid 40
Electric luggage compartment lid (Octavia Estate) 41
Electrical power windows 44
Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia) 47
Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate) 48

Lights and visibility 51
Lights 51
Interior lights 58
Visibility 60
Windscreen wipers and washers 62
Rear mirror 64

Seats and useful equipment 67
Adjusting the seats 67
Seat features 71
Useful equipment 74
Luggage compartment 85
Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) 94
Net partition (Octavia Estate) 96
Roof rack system 98

Heating and air conditioning system 101
Heating, ventilation, cooling 101
Heating 103
Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system) 105
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system) 107
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 110

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 113
Steering 113
Start and stop the engine with the key 114
Start and stop the engine - KESSY 116
Braking 119
Manual shifting of gears and pedals 121
Automatic transmission 121
Running in 125
Economical driving and environmental sustainability 126
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 130
Driving abroad 131

Assist systems 132
Brake assist systems 132
Parking aid 135
Park assist 137
Cruise Control System 141
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 143
Area monitoring system (Front Assist) 149
START-STOP 153
Driving mode 156
ProActive passenger protection 158
Lane Assist 158
Traffic sign recognition 161
Fatigue detection (break recommendation) 162

Towing a trailer 164
Towing device 164
Trailer 167

Safety

Passive Safety 171
General information 171
Correct seated position 172

Seat belts 175
Using seat belts 175
Inertia reel and belt pretensioners 178

Airbag system 180
Description of the airbag system 180
Airbag overview 181
Deactivating airbags 185

Transporting children safely 188
Child seat 188
Fastening elements 191

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle 193
Washing your car 193
Taking care of your vehicle exterior 194
Taking care of the interior 198
Modifications, repairs and technical alterations 200

Inspecting and replenishing 204
Fuel 204
Engine compartment 206
Engine oil 210

Coolant 212
Brake fluid 214
Vehicle battery 215

Wheels 220
Tyres and wheel rims 220
Winter operation 226

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help 227
Emergency equipment 227
Changing a wheel 229
Tyre repair 232
Jump-starting 235
Towing the vehicle 236
Remote control 238
Emergency unlocking/locking 239
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 241

Fuses and light bulbs 243
Fuses 243
Bulbs 247

Technical data

Technical data 254
Vehicle data 254

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
AHL	Adaptive headlights
TCS	Traction control
CO_2 in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometre
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection

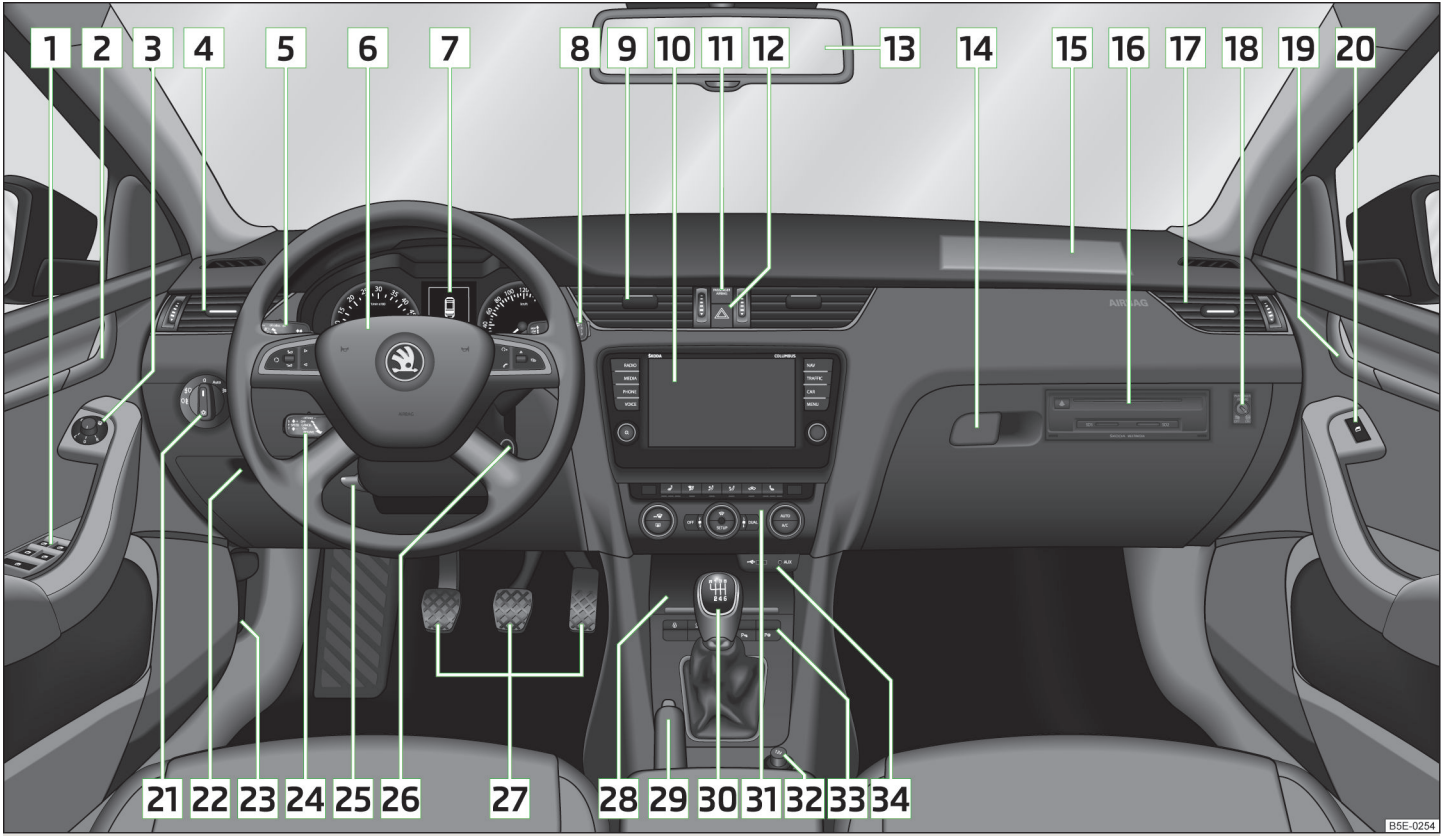

Fig. 1 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electrical power windows — 44
2 Door opening lever on the driver's side — 37
3 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 66
4 Air outlet vent on the driver's side — 102
5 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 53
› Speed regulating system — 141
› Activating the menu item wizard — 27
6 Steering wheel:
› With horn
› With driver's front airbag — 182
› With keys for the Infotainment control » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Device Operation*
7 Instrument cluster — 9
8 Operating lever:
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 62
› Multifunction display — 28
› Information display — 27
9 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 102
10 Infotainment » *owner's manual for the Infotainment radio or navigation*
11 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 186
12 Button for hazard warning light system — 57
13 Interior rear-view mirror — 65
14 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 81
15 Front passenger airbag — 182
16 CD/DVD drive and memory card slot (in the passenger-side storage compartment) » *owner's manual for the Infotainment radio and/or navigation*
17 Air outlet vent on the front passenger side — 102
18 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 186
19 Door opening lever on the front passenger side — 37
20 Power window in the front passenger door — 46
21 Light switch — 52
22 Storage compartment on the driver's side — 75
Fuse box (behind the storage compartment on the driver's side) — 244
23 Bonnet release lever — 208
24 Operating lever for adaptive cruise control — 146
25 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 114
26 Ignition lock — 115
27 Pedals — 121
28 Storage compartment/ phone box » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Phonebox*
29 Handbrake lever — 120
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 121
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 122
31 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Operating controls for the heating — 103
› Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 105
› Operating controls for Climatronic — 107
32 Depending on equipment fitted:
› 12-Volt power socket — 79
› Cigarette lighter — 78
33 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
› Central locking system — 36
› START STOP — 153
› Traction control TCS — 133
› Electronic Stability Control ESC — 132
› Selection of driving mode — 156
› Park Assist — 137
› Parking aid — 135
› Tyre inflation pressure calibration — 223
34 Depending on equipment fitted:
› USB/AUX input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *USB/AUX Inputs*
› MEDIA IN input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *MEDIA IN input*

Note

The arrangement of the controls and switches and the location of some items on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 1. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview 9
Revolutions counter 10
Display 10
Speedometer 10
Coolant temperature gauge 11
Fuel gauge 11
Counter for distance driven 12
Setting the time 12
Viewing the charge level vehicle battery 12
Service interval display 12
Auto-check control 13

Component protection

If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » page 202, *Component protection*.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

Error: Instrument cluster. Workshop!

COMBIINSTRUM_WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Never operate the button 6 in the instrument cluster » Fig. 2 on page 9 while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

Overview

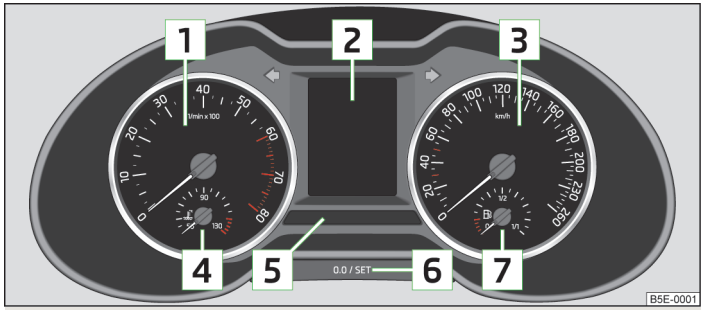

Fig. 2 **Instrument cluster**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

1 Revolutions counter with warning lights » page 10
2 Display » page 10
   - With counter for distance driven » page 12
   - With service interval display » page 12
   - With digital clock » page 12
   - With information system » page 25
   - With control symbols » page 20
3 Speedometer[1] with warning lights » page 10
4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 11

[1] During the journey, the speed can be displayed in a different unit (mph or km/h) in addition to the tachometer display.

5 Bar with warning lights » page 14
6 Button for:
› Set hours/minutes » page 12
› Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 12
› Resetting Service Interval Display » page 12
› Reset trip counter for the distance driven » page 12
› Charge level indicator » page 12
7 Fuel gauge » page 11

Revolutions counter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

The red scale of the rev counter 1 » Fig. 2 on page 9 indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed. The system automatically restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next higher gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

Follow the recommended gear to prevent engine speeds that are too high or too low » page 26.

For the sake of the environment

Correct shifting up has the following advantages.
- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Display

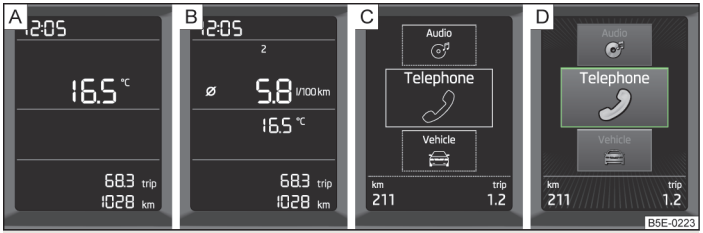

Fig. 3 **Display types**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

The instrument cluster can have one of the following types of display » Fig. 3.
A Segment display without multi function display
B Segment display with multi-function display
C Monochromatic information display
D Colour information display

Speedometer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

Warning against excessive speeds
An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h[1]. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

[1] This function only applies to certain countries.

Coolant temperature gauge

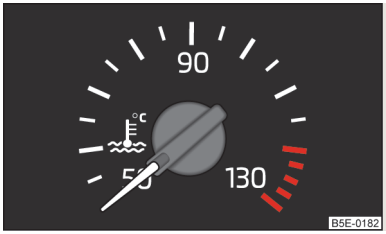

Fig. 4
Coolant temperature gauge

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

The coolant temperate display » Fig. 4 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Cold range
If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range
If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 21.

CAUTION

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.

Fuel gauge

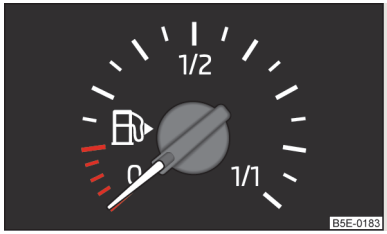

Fig. 5
Fuel gauge

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

The fuel gauge » Fig. 5 only operates if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 50 litres. If the pointer reaches the reserve marking (red area of the scale), the control indicator » page 23 lights up.

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and exhaust system.

Note

The arrow ▶ next to the icon within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

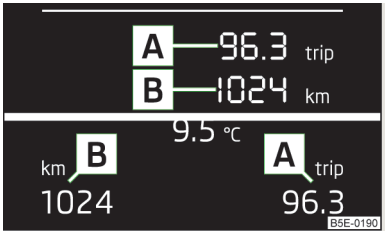

Fig. 6
Segment display/information display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

Daily trip counter (trip)
The daily trip counter A » Fig. 6 shows the distance driven since the time the counter was last reset - in steps of 100 m.

Reset trip counter for the distance driven
› Briefly press the button 6 » Fig. 2 on page 9.

Odometer
The odometer B » Fig. 6 indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

Setting the time

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button 6 » Fig. 2 on page 9 until the **Time** is shown in the display.
› Release the button 6, and the system switches to the time setting function.
› Press the button 6 again and set the hours.
› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button 6 again and set the minutes.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Unit setup*.

Viewing the charge level vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Press and hold the button 6 » Fig. 2 on page 9 until the **Battery status** or **BATTERY SOC** is shown in the display.
› Release the button 6 - the current charge level of the vehicle battery is displayed in %.

Service interval display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date

Before reaching the service date, the icon appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message for example.

Oil change in ... Days
OIL CHANGE IN ... DAYS

or

Inspection in ... Days
INSPECT_ IN ... DAYS

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date

Once the service interval is reached, the icon appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message for example.

Oil change now!
OIL CHANGE NOW

or

Inspection now!
INSPEC TION NOW

or

Oil change and inspection now!
OIL CHAN_ AND INSPECTION NOW

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the button 6 » Fig. 2 on page 9 and keep it pressed down until **Service** appears.
› Release the button 6.

The icon appears in the display, as well as the following message for example.

Service in ... km or... days.
SERVICE IN ... km OR... DAYS

Resetting Service Interval Display
If the variable service interval is set in your vehicle and if the service interval display is reset, the variable service interval is switched to the fixed service interval.

We therefore recommend that the Service Interval Display be reset only by a specialist garage, which will reset the display with a vehicle diagnostic tester.

Reset - oil change service
› Switch off the ignition (for vehicles with the KESSY system all doors as well as the luggage compartment and bonnet flaps must also be shut).
› Press the button 6 » Fig. 2 on page 9 and keep it pressed down.
› Switch on the ignition, the following message displays.

Reset oil change service?
RESET OIL SERVICE

› Release and then press again the button 6.

Reset - Inspection
› Switch off the ignition (for vehicles with the KESSY system all doors as well as the luggage compartment and bonnet flaps must also be shut).
› Press the button 6 » Fig. 2 on page 9 and keep it pressed down.
› Switch on the ignition and keep button 6 pressed down until the following message displays.

Reset inspection service – are you sure?
RESET SERVICE

› Release and then press again the button 6.

CAUTION

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Note

- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. We recommend having this work undertaken by a ŠKODA service partner.
- For more information on the service intervals » *service schedule*, chapter *service intervals*.

Auto-check control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 9.

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Error messages and/or other information are displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Some messages are displayed simultaneously with the warning lights » page 14 or warning icons in the display » page 20.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols ⚠ or ⚠ continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Symbol	Description
⚠	Warning
⚠	Danger

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 57. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Automatic gearbox 14
Handbrake 15
Braking system 15
Seat belt warning light, front 16
Power steering 16
Traction Control System (ASR) 16
Traction control system (TCS) off 17
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 17
Antilock brake system (ABS) 17
Rear fog light 17
Exhaust inspection system 17
Glow plug system (diesel engine) 18
Engine performance check (petrol engine) 18
Safety Systems 18
Tyre inflation pressure 18
Brake pad thickness 19
Lane following system (Lane Assist) 19
Turn signal system 19
Trailer turn signal lights 19
Fog lights 19
Cruise control system 19
Selector lever lock 20
Main beam 20

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

The condition of some features and systems is shown by the warning icons on the display » page 20.

The warning lights are at the following locations in the instrument cluster » Fig. 2 on page 9.

› Revolutions counter 1
› Speedometer 3
› Bar with warning lights 5

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 57. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 206, *Engine compartment*.

Automatic gearbox

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning lights indicate a fault or the state of the automatic gearbox.

Warning light	Message	Meaning and Action
	Error: Gearbox. No reverse gear possible. **GEARBOX ERROR REV_GEAR NOT AVAIL**	Fault with automatic gearbox, reverse gear cannot be engaged. Consult a specialist garage for help.
	Error: Gearbox **GEARBOX ERROR**	Fault with automatic gearbox. Consult a specialist garage for help.
	Gearbox overheated. **GEARBOX OVERHEATED**	The temperature of the automatic gearbox clutches is too high. **Do not drive on!** Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and wait until the warning light goes off - risk of gearbox damage! Once the light goes off, you may continue your journey. If the warning light does not go off, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.
	Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book! **STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**	The temperature of the automatic gearbox clutches is too high. **Do not drive on!** Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and wait until the warning light goes off - risk of gearbox damage! If the warning light does not go off, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.
	Gearbox faulty. Workshop! **GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**	Fault with automatic gearbox. Consult a specialist garage for help.

Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light (P) comes on if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Release the handbrake!
RELEASE HANDBRAKE

Braking system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Brake fluid: Log book!
BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 214 » !.

If the warning light lights up together with the warning light , there is a problem with the ABS.

WARNING

- If the warning light is displayed simultaneously with warning light » page 17, *Antilock brake system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light, front

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

The warning light comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt.

The warning light goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened their seat belt.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h, the warning light flashes and you will hear an acoustic signal.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light lights up permanently.

Further information » page 175, *Seat belts*.

Power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater. Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light lights up, this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 114.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance. If after a new engine start and a short ride the yellow warning light does not go out, seek help from a specialist garage.

Traction Control System (ASR)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC » page 132.

The warning light flashes to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Error: Traction control
ASR ERROR

Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the warning light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the TCS is fully functional again.

Further information » page 132 and » page 133, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Traction control system (TCS) off

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light is lit, the TCS is off.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Traction control (ASR) deactivated.
ASR OFF

Further information » page 133, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

A flashing warning light shows that the ESC system is currently operating.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the ESC system.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)
ESC ERROR

Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the ESC system may be switched off for technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ESC system is fully functional again.

Further information » page 132, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Error: ABS
ABS ERROR

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 133, *Antilock Braking System (ABS)*.

WARNING

- If the warning light is displayed simultaneously with warning light , **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light comes on when the rear fog light is switched on.

Further information » page 56.

Exhaust inspection system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

EPC Engine performance check (petrol engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light EPC lights up, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Safety Systems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

Fault with airbag system

When the warning light lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system.

Error: Airbag
AIRBAG ERROR

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored automatically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

› The warning light lights up for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.
› The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.
AIRBAG/BELT TENSIONER OFF

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

› The warning light comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
› The warning light OFF in the display PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF in the middle of the dash panel lights up after switching on the ignition » page 186.

ProActive passenger protection

When the warning light lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ProActive passenger protection not available.
PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL

or

ProActive passenger protection: funct. restricted.
LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT

! WARNING

If there is a fault in the safety system, have it checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the systems not being activated in the event of an accident.

Tyre inflation pressure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light **lights up**, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » page 220.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

If the warning light **flashes**, there is a fault in the system.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 223, *Tyre control display*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Brake pad thickness

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

If the indicator light is lit, the brake pads are worn.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Check brake wear!
BRAKE PADS PLEASE CHECK

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Lane following system (Lane Assist)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

The warning lights indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

Further information » page 158.

Turn signal system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

Either the left or right indicator light flashes depending on the position of the control lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Further information » page 53, *Turn signal and main beam*.

Trailer turn signal lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

if the warning light flashes, the trailer turn signal lights are turned on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

Trailer: check left turn signal!
TRAILER TURN SIG_ CHECK LEFT

The trailer must be unhitched properly » page 164, *Towing a trailer*.

Fog lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

The warning light comes on when the fog lights are operating.

Further information » page 56.

Cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 14.

The warning light comes on when the cruise control is active.

Further information » page 141.

Selector lever lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, operate the brake pedal.

Further information » page 122.

Main beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light comes on when the main beam is selected or when the headlight flasher is operated.

Further information » page 53.

Warning icons in the display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear seat belt warning 21
Alternator 21
Coolant 21
Engine oil pressure 21
Engine oil level 22
Bulb failure 22
Diesel particle filter (diesel engine) 22
Windscreen washer fluid level 23
Fuel reserve 23
Headlight assist 23
START-STOP-system 23
Ice warning 24

The warning icons indicate the status of certain functions or faults.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » page 10.

After switching on the ignition, some warning icons illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning icons go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

Depending on the meaning of the warning icon, the icon ⚠ or ⚠ will also light up in the bar with the warning lights 5 » Fig. 2 on page 9.

Some warning icons can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

The status of some features and systems is shown by the warning lights » page 14.

Symbol	Description
⚠	Warning
⚠	Danger

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols ⚠ or ⚠ continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

On vehicles with a colour information display » Fig. 3 on page 10 - D, some warning icons in the display are in colour.

! WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning icons and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 57. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 206, *Engine compartment*.

Rear seat belt warning

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 20.

A rear seat belt is not fastened
A rear seat belt is fastened

The warning icons or come on after the ignition has been switched on.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular icon lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Further information » page 175, *Seat belts*.

Alternator

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 20.

The warning icon lights up if the vehicle battery is not charged when the engine is running.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If the icon (cooling system fault) comes on in addition to the icon when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and switch off the engine – risk of engine damage!

Coolant

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 20.

Coolant level too low

If the coolant level is too low, the warning icon lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK Log book!
ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » page 213.
› If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » page 214.
› If, after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, the warning icon disappears, you can continue your journey.
› If the coolant level is within the specified range, but the warning icon is still lit, check the fuse for the radiator fan and replace it if necessary » page 246, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.
› If the coolant level and fan fuse are in order, but the warning icon is still lid, **do not continue your journey!**
› Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

If the coolant temperature is too high, the warning icon lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Engine overheat. Stop! Log book!
ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP

› Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
› Wait until the coolant temperature gauge pointer returns to the operating range » page 11.
› Continue your journey only after the warning icon has disappeared.

WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

Engine oil pressure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 20.

When the warning icon flashes, the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Oil pressure: Stop! Log book!
STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 211, *Checking the oil level*.

Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning icon is flashing! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 20.

Engine oil level too low
If the warning icons and ⚠ **are lit**, the engine oil level is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Oil level: top up oil!
TOP UP OIL

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 211.

The warning icon will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning icon will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high
If the warning icons and ⚠ are **lit** in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level is too high.

Reduce oil level!
OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 211.

Engine oil level sensor
If the warning icons and ⚠ are **lit** in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level sensor is defective.

Oil sensor: Workshop!
OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Bulb failure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 20.

The warning icon comes on if a bulb is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

Check right dipped headlight beam!
DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT

Diesel particle filter (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 20.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning icon lights up, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter.

To clean the diesel particle filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive for at least 15 minutes or until the warning icon goes out as follows.
› 4. or gear 5 engaged (automatic gearbox: Position D/S).
› Vehicle speed at least 60 km/h.
› Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon goes out.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning icon does not go out and the warning icon begins to flash.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Diesel particulate filter: Log book!
DIESEL PM FILTER OWNER MANUAL

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park in areas where the hot filter can come into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials – there is the risk of fire!
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning icon lights up, you must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

Note

- We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Windscreen washer fluid level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 20.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning icon comes on.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Top up washer fluid!
WASHER FLUID PLEASE TOP UP

Top up with liquid » page 209.

Fuel reserve

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 20.

If the warning icon comes on, there is a fuel reserve of under about 7 litres left.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Please refuel. Range: ... km
PLEASE REFUEL

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Headlight assist

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 20.

The warning icon is lit when the headlight assist is activated.

Further information » page 55, *Headlight assist*.

START-STOP-system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 20.

The warning icons indicate the state of the START-STOP system.

Further information » page 153.

Ice warning

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 20.

The warning icon ❄ draws your attention to the risk of ice.

Further information » page 25.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on the display 25
Outside temperature 25
Recommended gear 26
Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning 26
Eco tips 26
Laptimer (Stopwatch) 26
Information display 27

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Information on the display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems. These alerts and messages appear in the display of the instrument cluster 2 » Fig. 2 on page 9 (hereafter only in the display).

The information system provides the following information.

› Outside temperature » page 25.
› Recommended gear » page 26.
› Door, boot lid and bonnet warning » page 26.
› Eco tips » page 26.
› Service interval display » page 12.
› Auto Check Control » page 13.
› Warning icons » page 20.
› Driving data (multifunction display) » page 28.
› Warning against excessive speeds » page 31.
› Details of the information display » page 27.
› Traffic sign recognition » page 161.
› Fatigue detection » page 162.
› Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 122.
› Information and alerts in the Assist systems » page 132.

Outside temperature

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C while driving, the following symbol ❄ (warning signal for ice on the road) appears before the temperature indicator and an audible signal will sound.

If the outside temperature is less than +4 °C when the ignition is turned on, the following symbol ❄ appears in the display and an acoustic signal sounds.

After pressing the rocker switch A or the adjustment wheel D » Fig. 10 on page 30, the function shown last is indicated.

WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Recommended gear

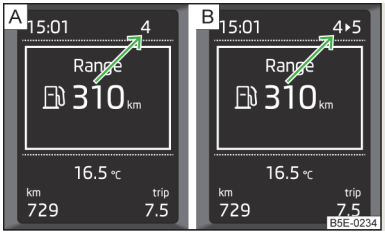

Fig. 7
Recommended gear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

Information about the currently-selected gear is shown in the upper part of the display » Fig. 7 - A.

When the system determines that a change in gear is required, the arrow symbol ▶ and the recommended gear appear next to the current gear indication » Fig. 7 - B.

For instance, if 4 ▶ 5 appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 4th into 5th gear.

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h.

Eco tips

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

To minimise fuel consumption, fuel economy tips can appear in the display.

Eco tips are indicated next to the letters **ECO-TIP**.

For instance, if the air-condition is on and a window is open, the following message appears **ECO TIP Air conditioning switched on: close windows.**

Eco tips display must be activated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Laptimer (Stopwatch)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

The Laptimer function offers the possibility of calculating the lap time, for example when driving on a race course. The calculated time is displayed in the information display.

The Laptimer function is operated with the buttons on the control lever or the buttons on the steering wheel » page 27, *Information display*.

The calculated times are displayed in minutes, seconds and deciseconds.

Activate Laptimer function

› From the main menu of the information display select the menu item **Laptimer** .

The following functions are available.

- **Start** - Start the timing manually or continue the interrupted measurement
- **From Start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times

Time measurement

Manually start the measurement

› Select the menu item **Laptimer** - **Start**.

Start the measurement automatically

› Select the menu item **Laptimer** - **From Start**. Timing will begin automatically when starting up.

Start timing of next round
› Select the menu item **New round** during timing.

During timing, information about the fastest and the last lap time are also displayed in the information display .

Measure split time
› During the timing, select the menu item **split time**. The split time data is displayed for about 5 seconds in the information display.

The split time can be measured repeatedly during a round.

Stop measurement
› During the timing, press the menu item **Stop**.

The time measurement is stopped, the following functions are now available.

- **Continue** - Continue measurement of the current lap time
- **New round** - Start measurement of the next lap time.
- **Abort lap** - Cancel the timer (the aborted lap time is not stored)
- **End** - End timing (the aborted lap time is stored)

Evaluate recorded times
› Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics**.

The following information is displayed.
› **Fastest:** - The fastest lap
› **Slowest:** - The slowest lap
› **Average:** - The average lap time
› **Overall time:** - The total of all the lap times

Reset measured times
› Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics** - **Reset**.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Only use the Laptimer system when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control over the vehicle.

Note

- The system allows the measurement of up to 11 lap times.
- Measurement of each individual lap ends after 99 hrs, 59 min. and 59 sec. Once this time has been reached, measurement of the new lap starts automatically.
- The measured times cannot be reset individually.
- If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Information display

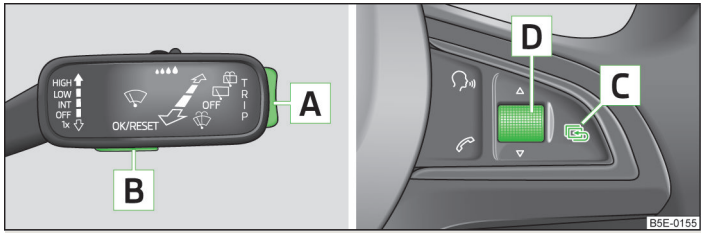

Fig. 8 **Buttons (adjustment wheel) on the operating lever/multifunction steering wheel**

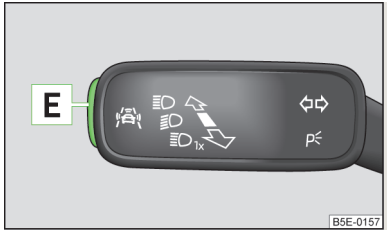

Fig. 9
Operating lever: Button to open the menu item wizard

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

The information display provides you with information on the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information display also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the Infotainment, multi-functional indicator, etc.

Operating with the buttons on the operating lever
Activate the Main menu by pressing the rocker switch A » Fig. 8 for longer.

Individual menu items can be selected by means of the rocker switch A. When the pushbutton B is briefly pressed, the information you have selected is displayed.

Operating the button/adjustment wheel on the multifunction steering wheel
Activate the Main menu by briefly pressing the rocker switch C » Fig. 8.

The individual menus can be selected by pressing the adjustment wheel D. The selected menu is displayed after briefly pressing the adjustment wheel D.

By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.

Main menu points

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle).
- **Driving data** » page 28
- **Wizard** » page 158, » page 149
- **Navigation** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Navigation system (NAV button)*
- **Audio** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Media (MEDIA button)*
- **Telephone** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Communication (PHONE button)*
- **Vehicle** » page 13, *Auto-check control*
- **Lap timer** » page 26

Menu item wizard
In the menu item **wizard,** by pressing the button B or the adjustment wheel D, » Fig. 8 the systems **Front Assist** and **Lane Assist** can be enabled or disabled.

The menu item **wizard** in the main menu can also be opened by pressing the button E on the control lever » Fig. 9.

Note

If warning messages are shown in the information display, these messages must be confirmed with the button B on the operating lever » Fig. 8 or with the adjustment wheel D on the multifunction steering wheel to call up the main menu.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information overview 28
Select information 30
Memory 30
Warning at excessive speeds 31

The multifunction display only operates if the ignition is switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

Individual menu items can be shown or hidden in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Note

In some national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measurement.

Information overview

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

Range
The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the warning icon the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range can increase if you drive in a more fuel-efficient manner.

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption[1] is calculated since the last time the memory was erased » page 30.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » Fig. 10 on page 30.

After erasing the memory, no fuel consumption data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

The fuel consumption data is updated continuously while you are driving.

Current fuel consumption
You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption[1].

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[2].

Oil temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the temperature lies below 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, **---** are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds
Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » page 31.

Traffic sign recognition

The display can show up to three of the following traffic signs simultaneously.
› Maximum permissible speed (including additional signs).
› Overtaking prohibited.

Further information » page 161, *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current driving speed
The current speed is identical to the display on the speedometer 3 » Fig. 2 on page 9.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour » page 30.

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » page 30.

After erasing the memory, no average speed data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The average speed data is updated regularly while you are driving.

Distance travelled
The distance driven since the memory was last erased appears in the display.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 30.

The maximum distance indicated is 9999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Driving time
The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 30.

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Convenience consumers
The consumption display for the convenience consumers in l/h.

Together with the consumption display, a list of three convenience consumers with the highest consumption is also displayed.

[1] The units for the displayed consumption are set in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Device Settings*.
[2] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --,- kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

Select information

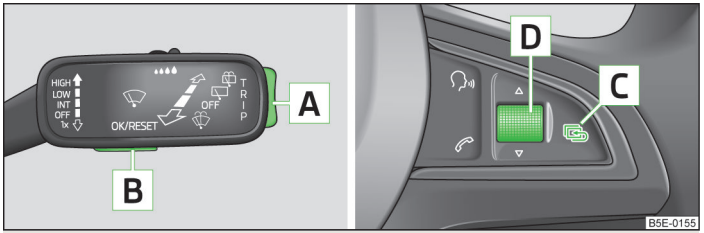

Fig. 10 **Buttons (adjustment wheel) on the operating lever/multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

Selecting using the operating lever
› Briefly press the rocker switch A » Fig. 10 up or down.

Selecting using the multifunction steering wheel
› Turn the adjustment wheel D » Fig. 10 upwards or downwards.

Memory

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

The multifunction display is equipped with three automatic memories.

Select memory
› Press the button B or the adjustment wheel D» Fig. 10 on page 30 briefly.

Resetting
› Select the desired memory.
› Press longer on the button B or adjustment wheel D » Fig. 10 on page 30.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.
› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time

Since start
The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term
The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9999 kilometres driven.

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Since refuel
The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Warning at excessive speeds

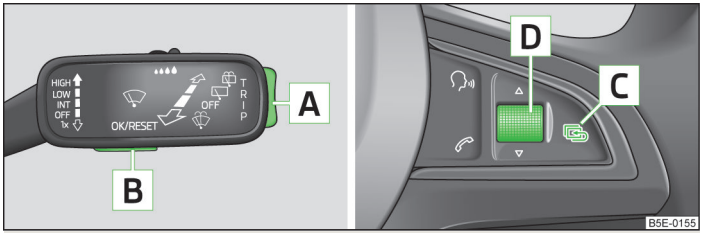

Fig. 11 **Buttons (adjustment wheel) on the operating lever/multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Press button A » Fig. 11 or turn adjustment wheel D to select menu item **Warning at**.
› Pressing the button B or the adjustment wheel D activates the setup mode for the speed limit.
› Press button A or turn adjustment wheel D to set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Confirm the speed limit by pressing button B, or adjustment wheel D or wait around 5 seconds. Your settings are saved automatically.

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Press button A » Fig. 11 or turn adjustment wheel D to select menu item **Warning at**.
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› By pressing the button B or the adjustment wheel D the current speed is accepted as the speed limit (the value flashes).

If you wish to change the set speed limit, it is changed in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Press again the button B or the adjustment wheel D to confirm the speed limit, or wait approx. 5 seconds and the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

Change or delete speed limit

› Press button A » Fig. 11 or turn adjustment wheel D to select menu item **Warning at**.
› Pressing the button B or the adjustment wheel D deletes the speed limit.
› Pressing the button B or the adjustment wheel D again activates change mode for the speed limit.

If the pre-set speed is exceeded, an acoustic signal appears as a warning tone and a warning message appears in the display, e.g.

Speed 50 exceeded.
SPEED TOO HIGH

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deleted.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car key 33
Unlocking/locking with the key 33
Lock / unlock with the remote control 34
Unlocking/locking – KESSY 35
Safe securing system 35
Individual settings 36
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside 36
Child safety lock 37
Opening/closing a door 37

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and luggage compartment lid at the same time based on the current setting[1].

The safe securing system » page 35 is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » !.

The following is true after unlocking[1]
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The interior light operated via the door contact illuminates.
› The safe securing system is switched off.
› The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

The following is true after locking[1].
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The interior light operated via the door contact goes out.
› The safe securing system is switched on.

[1] Depending on the individual setting » page 36.

› The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Displaying an error
If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- If the car is locked and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk of death!
- Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings.

i Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Only the driver's door can be unlocked or locked using the key if the central locking system fails » page 33. The other doors and the boot lid can be emergency locked or unlocked.
  - Emergency locking of the door » page 240.
  - Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid » page 240.

Car key

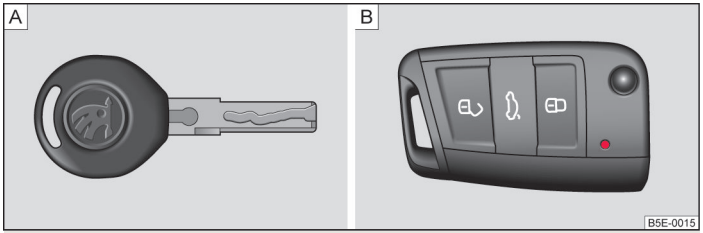

Fig. 12 **Key: without/with remote control**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

Two keys are provided with the vehicle » Fig. 12.

A Keys without remote control

B Keys with remote control (remote control keys)

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle. The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The remote control key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

The spare key must by initialised by a specialist garage after the receiver unit is repaired or replaced. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle – even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop! The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 238.

Note

If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to provide you with a new one.

Unlocking/locking with the key

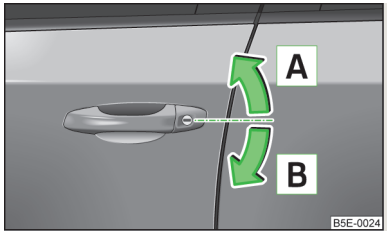

Fig. 13
Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

Unlocking

› Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 13.

On vehicles with remote control, only the driver's door is unlocked.

Locking

› Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of arrow B » Fig. 13.

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Lock / unlock with the remote control

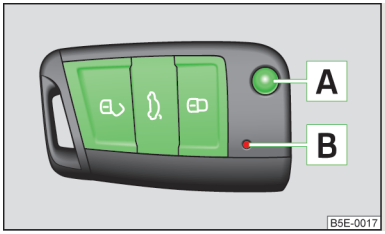

Fig. 14
Remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

Explanation of graphic

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking the boot lid
- A Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- B Warning light

Unlocking
The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The seat and mirror are adjusted after the vehicle is unlocked » page 70.

Locking
The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the luggage compartment lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

The current position of the seat and mirror after the vehicle is locked » page 70.

Checking the battery condition
The battery is empty if the red warning icon B » Fig. 14 does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key. Replace the battery » page 238.

WARNING

If the car is locked from the outside and the safelock system is switched on, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk of death!

CAUTION

- Only operate the remote control when the doors and luggage compartment lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.

Note

For vehicles with the anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can additionally also be enabled / disabled when unlocking /locking » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

Unlocking/locking – KESSY

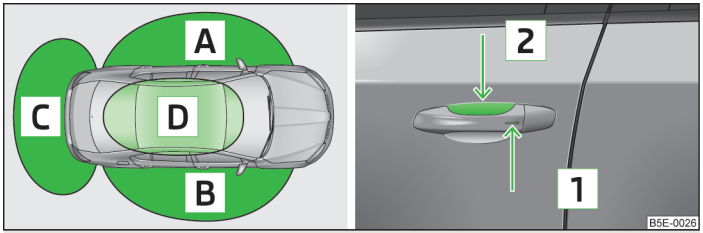

Fig. 15 **KESSY: Name of the zones / sensors in the front door handle**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key. The key must be located at a maximum distance of about 1.5 m from the unlocking or locking area » Fig. 15.

Unlocking

› Grab the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor 2 » Fig. 15 with the whole palm of your hand » !.

Locking

› Touch the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle of the boot lid » Fig. 20 on page 41.

Switching off the safelock system

› Use your fingers to touch the sensor 1 twice within 2 seconds.

Unlocking or locking areas

A Front door left
B Front door right
C Luggage compartment lid

If you cover the sensor 2 at the same time as the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 when unlocking the vehicle, it is not unlocked.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor 1, it will not be possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via the sensor 2 - prevents accidental unlocking.

The KESSY system can find the valid key, even if it was left in the front of the vehicle's roof for example D » Fig. 15. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

Always check to see whether the vehicle is locked.

Further information about the KESSY system » page 38.

CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the grip sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.
- After leaving the vehicle, it does not lock automatically, the procedure for locking the vehicle must therefore be observed.
- If the battery in the key is weak or discharged, the vehicle may not be unlocked or locked via the KESSY system. In this case, use the emergency unlocking or emergency locking on the driver's door » page 240.

Safe securing system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. Afterwards, it is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

Check SAFELOCK! Log book!
CHECK SAFELOCK

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching off

The safelock can be switched off by locking twice within 2 seconds.

Switching on
The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-on display
The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switch-off display
The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Individual settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually » *owner's manual of Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Opening a single door
This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking the vehicle with the KESSY system
This function enables you to unlock all the doors, individual doors, both doors on the left or right vehicle side. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking/unlocking
All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button.

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside

Fig. 16
Central locking button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock or lock it with the button » Fig. 16 without the ignition switched on. While a door is opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Locking
› Press the button » Fig. 16.

The symbol in the button comes on.

Unlocking
› Press the button » Fig. 16.

The symbol in the button is no longer illuminated.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.
› It is not possible to open the doors or the luggage compartment lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Note

If the safelock system is switched on » page 35, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Child safety lock

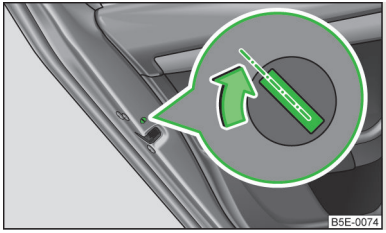

Fig. 17
Child safety locks on the rear doors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on

› Turn the slot of the safety lock in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 17 (mirror-inverted on the right doors).

Switching off

› Turn the slot of the safety lock in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 17 (mirror-inverted on the right doors).

Opening/closing a door

Fig. 18 **Door handle/door opening lever: outside/inside**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 32.

Opening from the outside

› Unlock the vehicle and pull the handle on the door handle A » Fig. 18.

Opening from the inside

› Pull the handle on the door opening lever B.

Closing from the inside

› Grab the pull handle C and close the door.

WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information message 38
Parking vehicle 38

Information message

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 38.

Key in the vehicle

The protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle unlocks the vehicle automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle, including the boot lit, has been locked.
✓ The key with which the vehicle has been locked remained in the vehicle in the area D » Fig. 15 on page 35.

The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Key in vehicle.
KEY IN VEHICLE

Additionally, on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, an audible signal sounds.

The system has not found a key

If the system has not found a key in the vehicle, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Key not found.
Key not detected. Log book!
NO KEY

This can occur if the key is outside the vehicle, the battery in the key is discharged, the key is defective or the electromagnetic field is strongly disturbed.

Fault in KESSY system

If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

Keyless access system faulty.
KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Low voltage of the key battery

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Change the key battery!
KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE

Change the key battery » page 238!

Parking vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 38.

If the vehicle is not unlocked within 60 or 90 hours, the sensors in the handle of the driver /front passenger's door are deactivated automatically » Fig. 15 on page 35.

Activation after 60 hours

› Unlock the driver's door using the sensor 2 » Fig. 15 on page 35.
› Press the handle of the boot lid.
› Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 240.

Activation after 90 hours

› Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 240.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating ____ 39
Interior monitor and towing protection ____ 40

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

An alarm is triggered when the following monitored areas of the vehicle have a fault.
› Bonnet.
› Boot lid.
› Doors.
› Ignition lock.
› Vehicle inclination » page 40.
› Interior of car » page 40.
› A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.
› Socket of the factory-fitted towing device » page 168, *Driving with a trailer*.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

The alarm is **switched off** by unlocking the vehicle or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 39.

Activating
The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 45 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Note

When the Vehicle is unlocked using the key on the driver's door, insert the key into the ignition and switch on the ignition in order to deactivate the alarm system.

Interior monitor and towing protection

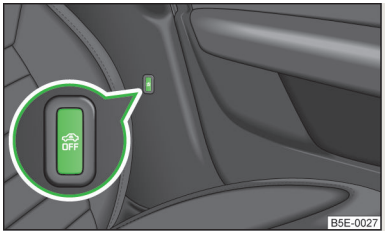

Fig. 19
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 39.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car or the inclination of the vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Switching off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button » Fig. 19 on the B-pillar on the driver's side. The lighting of the symbol in the button changes from red to orange.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements from (e.g. children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

CAUTION

▪ The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
▪ The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening / Closing 41
Automatic locking 41

WARNING

▪ Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if it was locked – risk of accident!
▪ Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
▪ Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – risk of injury!

CAUTION

▪ If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is automatically locked right away as soon as it is closed.
▪ Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack.

Note

The function of the handle above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening / Closing

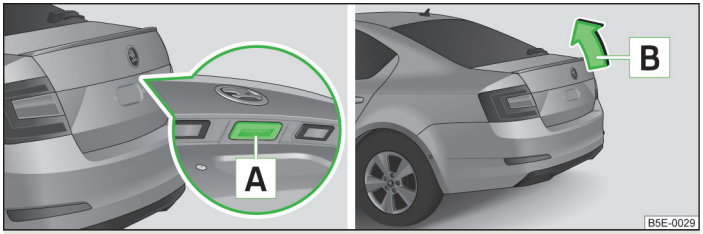

Fig. 20 **Handle of boot lid**

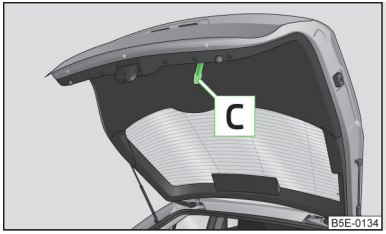

Fig. 21
Handle in the inner panelling of the boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 40.

After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the handle above the number plate.

Opening
› Press the handle A » Fig. 20 and raise the lid in the direction of the arrow B.

Closing
› Pull the lid down the handle C » Fig. 21 and close with a slight swing.

Automatic locking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 40.

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is automatically locked right away as soon as it is closed.

The period after which the luggage compartment lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Delayed locking
If the boot lid was locked with the symbol button on the remote control key, then it is possible to open the lid within a limited period of it being closed.

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. Always lock the vehicle using the symbol button on the remote control or with the key if no remote control is available » page 33.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

Note

More detailed information is available from your authorised ŠKODA Partner.

Electric luggage compartment lid (Octavia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating description 42
Acoustic signals 43
Adjusting/deleting the top lid position 44
Malfunctions 44

Force limiter
The electric boot lid is fitted with a force limiter. If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Manual operation
Manually opening and closing the lid is only possible in exceptional cases, and must be completed slowly and without sudden movements as close to the centre of the lid as possible.

Handling the sides of the lid can damage the electric lid.

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if it was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

- The movement of the lid can be stopped by applying an abrupt and quick force against the lid.
- Do not try to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process. Damage can occur to the system of the electric boot lid.
- If the lid is closed manually, it must be ensured that when moving the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo.

CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- Ensure that there is at least 10 cm of clearance above the opened lid (e.g. distance from the garage ceiling). Otherwise, it may happen that the clearance above the opened lid is no longer sufficient after relieving the vehicle of a load (e.g. after unloading) – risk of causing damage to the lid.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the load on the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.

Note

In case of a fault, switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operating description

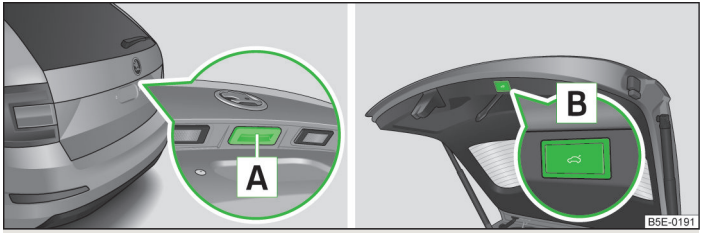

Fig. 22 **Lid operation**

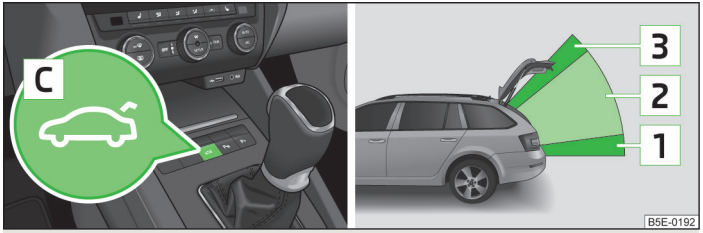

Fig. 23 **Lid operation/operating areas**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Control elements

The lid can be operated with the following control elements.
› With the symbol button on the remote control key (press for about 1 s).
› With the handle A on the outer part of the lid » Fig. 22.

› With the button B on the inner part of the lid » Fig. 22.
› With the button C in the centre console » Fig. 23.

Operating areas
The system distinguishes 3 operating areas where the function of the individual operating elements changes » Fig. 23. The end positions of the lid - fully closed in the secured lock and fully opened - differ as well.

The range of the area 3 changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid » page 44.

If the lid is set in the uppermost position in the area 2, the area 3 is not active. The range of the area 2 changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid.

Symbol explanation in the operating description
☑ Feasible action
☐ Non-feasible action
↩ Movement in the opposite direction to the previous movement

Lid operation with the handle A

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☑	☑	↩	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	↩	☑	☑

The operation of the lid using the handle A is only possible when the vehicle is unlocked.

Lid operation with the button B

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☐	☑	↩	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	↩	☑	☑

Operating the lid with the button B is only possible when the lid is open.

Lid operation with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button C

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☑	☑	☑	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

When the ignition is switched on, the operation of the lid does not function using the remote control key.

Operating the lid with the button C does not work if the vehicle was locked from the outside.

Operating the lid with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button C does not work when a trailer is coupled to the vehicle.

Acoustic signals

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

The acoustic signals serve as a safety function and provide information about the success of a performed action.

Signals	Status
Interrupted tone	Opening (with the button on the remote control key or with the button C » Fig. 23 on page 42) Automatic closing of the lid » page 42, ! in section *Introduction*
1 continuous tone	Force limiter
3 rising tones	Confirmation of the storage of the lid position
3 identical tones	fault

Adjusting/deleting the top lid position

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Adjusting

› Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 22 on page 42 for longer than 3 seconds.

Storing the new position is confirmed with an audible signal.

Delete

› Carefully lift up the lid manually to the maximum opening position.
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 22 on page 42 for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal sounds and the height which was originally set is deleted from the memory, while the basic position of the top lid position is again set.

The top lid position is adjusted, for example, in the following situations.
› When the space for opening the lid is limited (e.g. garage height).
› For a more convenient operation, such as by a person's height.

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

The lid always opens to the height which was last stored.

Malfunctions

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected while the lid is open, it is necessary to activate the system of the electric boot lid. Activation means closing the lid by hand. Thus, the end position of the lid is stored under fully closed in secured lock.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be lifted out of the lock	Emergency unlocking of the lid » page 240
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Remove any obstacle (e.g. snow), open the lid again » page 42 Press the handle A and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid

Electrical power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat 45
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors 46
Force limiter 46
Window convenience operation 46
Operational faults 47

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. The electrical power windows are only switched off completely once the driver's door or front passenger door are opened.

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

WARNING

- Ensure that no persons are still left in the vehicle when locking the vehicle. In an emergency, the windows will no longer be able to be opened from the inside.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 46. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrical power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton) S » Fig. 24 on page 45 when children are being transported on the rear seats.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 196, *De-icing windows and exterior mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 46.
- When leaving the locked vehicle make sure that the windows are closed at all times.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

The window lift system is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat

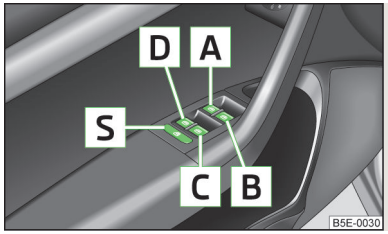

Fig. 24
Buttons on the driver's door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 44.

Opening

› A window is opened by pressing lightly on the respective button. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

The window fully opens automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› The window is closed through pulling lightly on the respective upper edge of the button. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

The window fully closes automatically by briefly pulling the button as far as the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Buttons for the electrical power windows » Fig. 24.

A Button for electrical power window of the driver's door
B Button for electrical power window of the front passenger door
C Button for electrical power window of the rear right door
D Button for electrical power window of the rear left door
S Safety pushbutton

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for electrical power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety pushbutton S » Fig. 24. The buttons for the electrical power windows in the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton S again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light in the safety switch S lights up.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

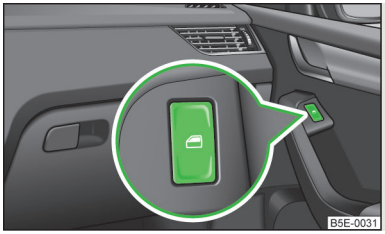

Fig. 25
Button arrangement in the front passenger door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 44.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening
› Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button **down** as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing
› Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

The window can be completely closed automatically by briefly pressing the button **up** as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Force limiter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 44.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 44.

Convenience opening/closing of all windows can be operated by locking/unlocking the vehicle as follows.

Settings the window convenience operation » *Infotainment owner's manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Opening and closing can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening
› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.

› Hold the button A[1] in the opening position » Fig. 24 on page 45.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› Hold the button A[1] in the closing position » Fig. 24 on page 45.
› In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 35.

You can interrupt the opening or closing process for the windows immediately by releasing the key or the the button A and interrupting the locking/unlocking.

The convenience opening of the windows by means of the key in the driver's/front passenger's lock is only possible within 45 seconds of deactivating or activating the alarm system.

Operational faults

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 44.

The automatic power windows do not work if the vehicle battery was disconnected and connected while a window is open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence:

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 3 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 47
Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof 48

[1] Convenience opening and closing the windows with the button A is possible immediately after unlocking the vehicle or turning off the ignition and opening the driver's or front passenger's door.

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position A » Fig. 26 on page 47, pull it, and hold onto the recess downwards and forwards tightly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

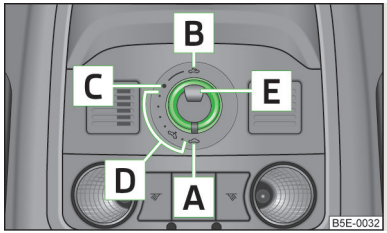

Fig. 26
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 47.

Comfort position

› Turn the switch to position C » Fig. 26.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially
› Turn the switch to a position in area D.

Open fully
› Turn the switch to position B and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof
› Turn the switch to position A.
› Press the switch in the region of the lug E towards the roof.

Closing
› Turn the switch to position A » Fig. 26.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and then pull it forwards.

Force limiter
The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess E down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » !.

WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 47.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking/unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 35.

Closing
The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 35.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor on the KESSY system 1, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof
› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Note

- The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature.
- In case of a fault with the sliding/tilting roof, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 49
Opening/closing the sun screen 49
Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof 50

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position A » Fig. 27 on page 49, pull it, and hold onto the recess downwards and forwards tightly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun screen does not operate correctly. Then turn the switch to position A » Fig. 27 on page 49 and press and hold the button G » Fig. 28 on page 49. The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

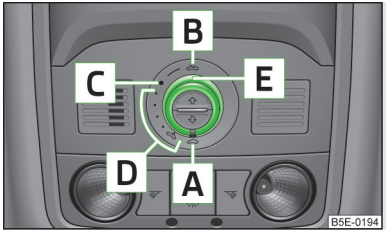

Fig. 27
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

Comfort position
› Turn the switch to position C » Fig. 27.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially
› Turn the switch to a position in area D.

Open fully
› Turn the switch to position B and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof
› Turn the switch to position A.
› Press the switch in the region E towards the roof.

Closing
› Turn the switch to position A » Fig. 27.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and then pull it forwards.

Force limiter
The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess E down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » !.

WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Opening/closing the sun screen

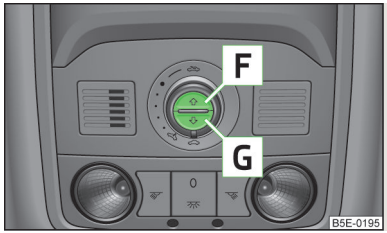

Fig. 28
Buttons for sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

The sun screen can be closed or opened using the buttons » Fig. 28.

Opening

› Briefly press the button F » Fig. 28 to open fully.
› Press and hold the button F to open to the desired position.

The opening process stops when one releases the button.

Closing

› Briefly press the button G » Fig. 28 to close fully.
› Press and hold the button F to close in the desired position.

The closing process stops when one releases the button.

Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking/unlocking using the key on the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 35.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key or hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position, or for the KESSY system, keep your finger on the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 35 » !.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor on the KESSY system 1, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

i Note

- The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature.
- In case of a fault with the sliding/tilting roof, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Side lights and low beam 52
Daytime running lights (DAY LIGHT) 52
Turn signal and main beam 53
Automatic driving lamp control 53
Adaptive headlights (AFS) 54
Headlight assist 55
Fog lights 56
Fog lights with the CORNERfunction 56
Rear fog light 56
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 57
Hazard warning light system 57
Parking lights 58

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of certain switches differs from that shown in » Fig. 29 on page 52. The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical.

The low beam continues to shine while the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in the position or **AUTO**. After switching off the ignition, the low beam is switched off automatically and only the side lights come on. The side light goes out after the ignition key is removed.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » page 197, *Headlight lenses*.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.
- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the given light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!

Note

- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.
- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
- The instruments are also illuminated when the side light, low or high beam light is switched on. The brightness of the instrument lighting can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Side lights and low beam

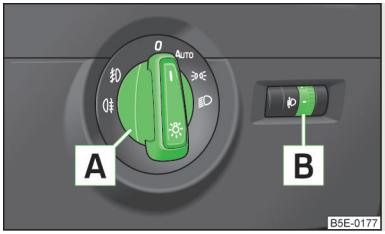

Fig. 29
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

The light switch also controls the fog lights » page 56, the rear fog light » page 56 and the parking light » page 58.

The light switch A » Fig. 29or the control dial B is used to operate the following functions.

- Switching on the parking light or parking lights on both sides.
- Switching on the low beam.
- 0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights).
- Headlight beam adjustment.

Turning the rotary switch B from position - to 3 gradually activates the headlight beam adjustment, thereby shortening the beam of light.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

- - Front seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- 1 All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- 2 All seats occupied, luggage compartment loaded.
- 3 Driver seat occupied, luggage compartment loaded.

! WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

i Note

- We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.
- The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

Daytime running lights (DAY LIGHT)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

The daytime running lights function provides the lighting of the front of the vehicle.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lights on vehicles with Infotainment
The daytime running light can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Deactivating daytime running lights on vehicles without Infotainment
› Pull the turn signal and main beam lever to the steering wheel and push downwards » Fig. 30 on page 53.
› At the same time switch on the ignition and hold the lever down in this position for at least 3 seconds.

Activating daytime running lights on vehicles without Infotainment
› Pull the turn signal and main beam lever to the steering wheel and push upwards » Fig. 30 on page 53.
› At the same time switch on the ignition and hold the lever down in this position for at least 3 seconds.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 31 on page 53.

i Note

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front or rear) and the number plate lights are not lit.

Turn signal and main beam

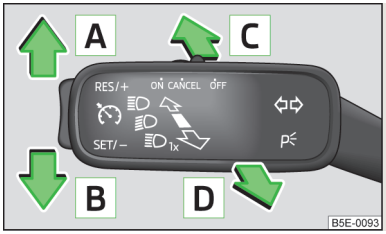

Fig. 30
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

The parking light » page 58 and headlight flasher are also operated with the operating lever.

The following functions can be operated with the operating lever » Fig. 30.

A Right turn signal on.
B Left turn signal on.
C High beam on (spring-tensioned position).
D Main beam off or headlight flasher ON (spring-tensioned position).

If you only wish to flash three times (convenience turn signal), briefly push the lever to the pressure point A or where applicable B and release again.

The convenience turn signal can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The main beam can be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

On vehicles with Headlight assist, when the lever is put into position C, the Assistant is activated » page 55.

The headlight flasher system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

! WARNING

Only use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note

- The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.
- The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

Automatic driving lamp control

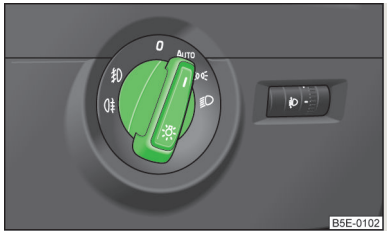

Fig. 31
Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 31, the side lights and low beam and number plate light are switched on/off automatically.

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the light sensor attached between the windscreen and the interior mirror.

The sensitivity of the light sensor can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the symbol **AUTO** lights up next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic headlight control in rain
If the light switch is in position **AUTO** and if automatic wiping in rain or wiping (position 2 or 3) is switched on for longer than 30 seconds » page 63, the side lights and low beam will switch on automatically.

The light switches off when automatic wiping/wiping (position 2 or 3) is not switched on for longer than approx. 4 seconds.

The automatic headlight control in rain can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

CAUTION

Do not affix any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled.

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

The AFS system works in tandem with automatic driving lamp control **AUTO**, please read the following » page 53.

The AFS system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle based on the vehicle speed, whether the windscreen wipers are in use, the rear fog lights, and data from Infotainment Navigation.

The AFS system can work only if the following condition is met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam. The mode is active if none of the following modes are active.

City mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it illuminates the adjacent pavement, crossings, etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km/h.

Motorway mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 110 km/h.

Rain mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 50 – 90 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Fog mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver is not dazzled by the reflection of the cone of light by fog in front of the vehicle.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the rear fog light is switched on for a period of time longer than 10 seconds. The mode is deactivated when the rear fig light is switched off for longer than 5 seconds.

Dynamic cornering lights
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km.h and in all AFS modes.

Tourist light
This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

When the "tourist light" mode is active, the above-mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

The "Tourist light" mode can be configured in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

WARNING

If the AFS system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Note

If the Eco driving mode is selected, the AFS system is deactivated » page 156.

Headlight assist

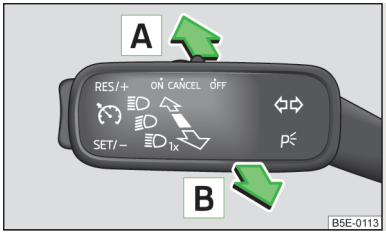

Fig. 32
Operating lever: Headlight assist

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

The Headlight assist switches the headlights on/off automatically depending on the environmental conditions.

The headlight is regulated based on data gathered by the camera attached between the windscreen and interior mirror.

The function of Headlight assist can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The headlight can switch off automatically at speeds above 60 km/h. The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

When the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, warning light is lit in the instrument cluster.

Activating

› Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** » Fig. 31 on page 53.
› Place the lever in position **A** (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 32.

The warning icon for the activated headlight assist appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Deactivating

› If the headlight **is** currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position **B** (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 32.
› If the headlight is **not** currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position **A** (the headlight switches on) followed by position **B**.

If you want to **reactivate** the Assist, put the lever back into position **A**.

The Assist can also be deactivated when the light switch is turned from position **AUTO** to another position.

Manually switching on the headlights

If the headlight is **not** switched on automatically, it can be switched on manually - put the lever into position **A**. The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon goes out.

Manually switching off the headlights

If the headlight is switched on automatically, it can be switched off manually - put the lever into position **B**. The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon goes out.

Information message

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

Error: Light Assist
LIGHT ASSIST FAULT

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Light Assist: clean the windscreen!
WINDSCREEN PLEASE CLEAN

Check for any obstacles on the windscreen in the viewing area of the camera.

WARNING

Headlight assist only functions as a support and does not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and light beam and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the light conditions. Manual operation may be required in the following situations.

- Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- The oncoming traffic is partially blocked on roads or motorways.
- Passing poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists.
- Driving around "sharp" curves.
- Driving on sharp slopes up/large inclines.
- Driving through poorly-lit locations.
- Driving over highly reflective surfaces.
- The windscreen around the camera is dirty, iced up, misted up, or covered by stickers.
- Near the camera lens there is a light source, such as the screen of an external navigation system.

CAUTION

▪ Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the Assist system.

Fog lights

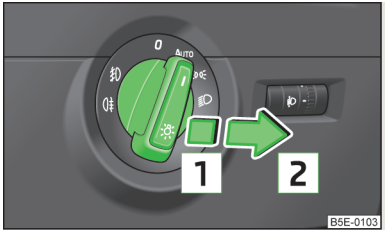

Fig. 33
Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 33.
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 14.

Fog lights with the CORNERfunction

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

The CORNER function improves illumination of the vehicle surroundings when turning, parking and the like, by switching on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle.

The CORNER function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left[1].
✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** or » Fig. 33 on page 56.
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the position 2. This switch only has one position.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 14.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME (hereafter referred to only as function) makes it possible to automatically switch on the lights for a short time after leaving the vehicle or when approaching the vehicle in poor visibility.

The function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO** » Fig. 31 on page 53.
✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
✓ The ignition is switched off.

The function and duration of the lighting can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the light sensor attached between the windscreen and the interior mirror » page 53.

The function switches on the parking and low beam lights, the entry lighting in the exterior mirrors and the licence plate light.

COMING HOME
The light turns on automatically when you open the driver's door.

The light turns off after the preset time when you close all the doors and the boot lid.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light goes out after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME
The light turns on automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light turns off after a preset time or after the vehicle is locked.

CAUTION

Do not affix any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled.

Note

If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Hazard warning light system

Fig. 34
Button for hazard warning light system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

Switching on/off
› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 34.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

When the turn signal is switched on while the hazard warning light system is on (ignition on), only the turn signal light for the selected driving direction will flash while the turn signal is switched on.

CAUTION

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.
- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

Parking light switching on

› Switch off the ignition.

› Place the lever into the position A or where applicable B as far as it can go » Fig. 30 on page 53 - the side light on the right/left side of the vehicle is switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

› Turn the light switch A to position » Fig. 29 on page 52 and lock the vehicle.

Note

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light 58
Rear interior light 59
Rear interior light 59
Front door warning light 60
Entry lighting 60

Front interior light

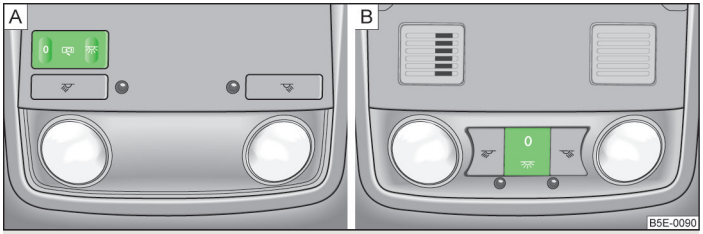

Fig. 35 **Interior lights at the front**

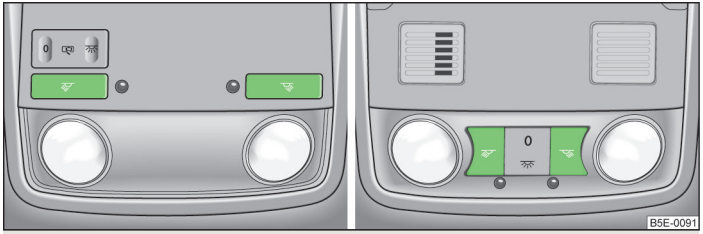

Fig. 36 **Reading lights**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

Switching on the light

› Press the button in the area of the symbol » Fig. 35.

Switching off the light

› Press the button in the area of the symbol **O** » Fig. 35.

Operating with the door contact switch

› Place the button in the middle position.

On vehicles without an interior monitor, the middle position is marked with the symbol » Fig. 35 - A.

Switching the reading light on/off

› Press the button or » Fig. 36.

If operating the light with the door contact switch is enabled, the light will come on when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is unlocked.
› One of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is being opened.
› The ignition key is removed.

If operating the light with the door contact switch is enabled, the light will go off when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked.
› The ignition is switched on.
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Note

▪ If the interior light remains switched on when the ignition is switched off or if one of the doors is open, the light will automatically go out after around 10 minutes.
▪ Two diffuse lights are integrated in the front interior lighting, that illuminate the gearshift lever and the middle of the dash panel. These are switched on automatically when the parking light is activated. Also, after switching on the ignition when the parking lights are switched on, the door handle lighting comes on.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles without a panoramic sliding roof.

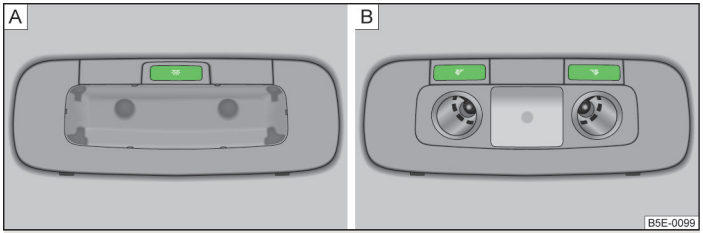

Fig. 37 **Interior light without reading lights/interior light with reading lights**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

The rear interior light is operated together with the front interior light » page 58.

Switching lamp without reading lights on/off

› Press the button » Fig. 37 - A.

Switching the reading light on/off

› Press the button or » Fig. 37 - B.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles with a panoramic sliding roof.

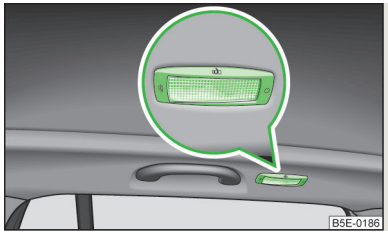

Fig. 38
Interior lights at the rear

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

Switching on

› Press the cover glass on the icon » Fig. 38.

Switching off

› Press the cover glass on the icon **O**.

Operating with the door contact switch

› Place the cover glass in the middle position .

In this position, the same rules apply to this light as for the front interior light » page 58.

Front door warning light

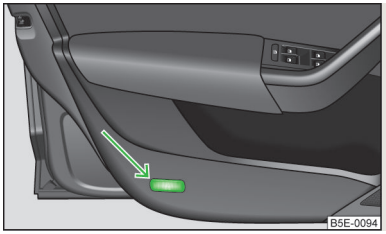

Fig. 39
Warning light

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

The warning light is located in the lower door trim panel » Fig. 39.

The light switches on/off when the front door is opened or closed.

Vehicles without this warning light have only a reflector at this point.

Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Entry lighting

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The light comes on after the vehicle has been unlocked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out within around 30 seconds after the front door is closed or the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater 60
Sun visors 61
Sun screen 61

Windscreen and rear window heater

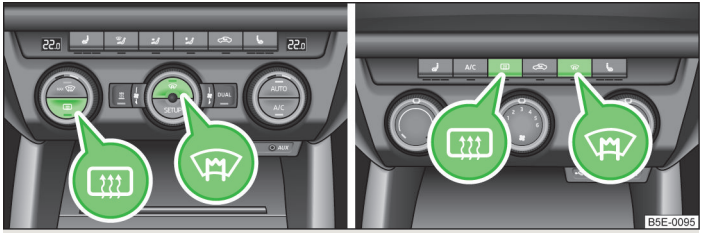

Fig. 40 **Buttons for the front and rear window heater/manual air-conditioning system, heating**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 60.

Explanation of graphic

- Switching the windscreen heater on/off.
- Switching the rear window heater on/off.

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside or below the button.

The windscreen and rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The windscreen and rear window heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » page 128, *Convenience consumers*.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the windscreen and rear window heater switches off automatically, to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 219, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light within or below the button flashes, the radiator will not work because of the low state of the battery.

Sun visors

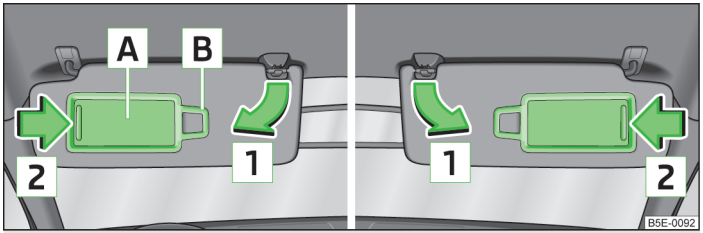

Fig. 41 **Sun visor: left/right**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 60.

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 41.

The sun visors each have a vanity mirror B with a cover. Push the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

The purpose of the note holder B is to store small objects, such as a notepad, etc.

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. These objects might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

Sun screen

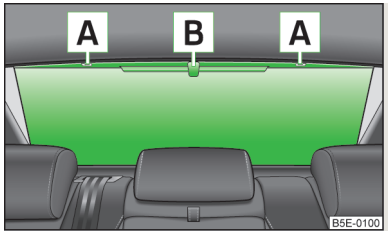

Fig. 42
Sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 60.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Pulling out

› Grab the handle B » Fig. 42.
› Remove the sun screen and hang it from the brackets A.

Folding

› Grab the handle B » Fig. 42.
› Remove the sun screen from the brackets A and slowly roll it up again into the housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers 63
Headlight cleaning system 64

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

When automatic wiping in rain is active, the wiper intervals are regulated based on the intensity of the rain.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 209.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 241.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping in rain only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- The ignition must not be switched on if the front windscreen wiper arms are folded out. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.
- Keep the wiper blades clean. They may become soiled, e.g., with wax residues after washing in automatic car wash systems » page 193.

Windscreen wipers and washers

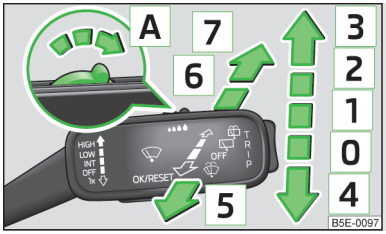

Fig. 43
Operating lever: Function of the the windscreen wipers and washers

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 62.

Function of the windscreen wipers and washers in the individual positions » Fig. 43

- 0 Wipers off
- 1 Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
- 2 slow windscreen wiping
- 3 rapid windscreen wiping
- 4 Flick windscreen wiping (spring-tensioned position)
- 5 Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
- 6 Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes every 6 seconds)
- 7 Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
- A Switches for setting the required break between the individual wiper strokes (1 periodic windscreen wiping) or the wiper speed in rain (1 automatic windscreen wiping in rain)

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain
Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). The lever remains in position 6.

Automatic rear window wipe (Octavia Estate)
If the windscreen wiper is in position 2 » Fig. 43 or 3 the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

When automatic windscreen wiping is active when raining (the lever is in the position 1) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper
If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

› Switch on the windscreen wipers.
› Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 241.

Note

If the slow or the fast wiper setting is switched on and the vehicle speed decreases to below 4 km/h, the wiper speed is incrementally set to a lower wiper speed. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.

Headlight cleaning system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 62.

The headlights will be cleaned once the ignition is on and always upon the first and after every tenth spraying of the windscreen, when the low beam is switched on.

Every time the windscreen is cleaned represents the tenth time each headlight is sprayed.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror ____ 65
Additional interior mirror ____ 65
Exterior mirrors ____ 66

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.
- The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

WARNING

Automatic dimming mirrors contain an electrolytic fluid which may leak should the mirror glass break.
- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, open all windows and doors.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

CAUTION

Never mechanically fold in or fold back the exterior mirrors with the fold-in function by hand as this will damage the electric drive.

Note

- Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the sun screen for the rear window in the housing on the boot cover is not in use or the light striking the interior rear-view mirror is not affected by other objects.
- If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the the electrical exterior mirror setting fails at any time, the two mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact a specialist garage if there is a fault with the power setting function for the exterior mirrors.

Interior mirror

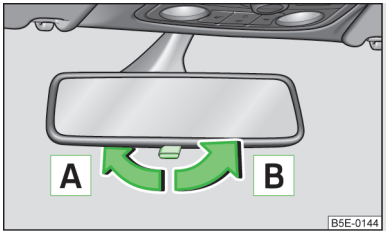

Fig. 44
Manual dimming mirror

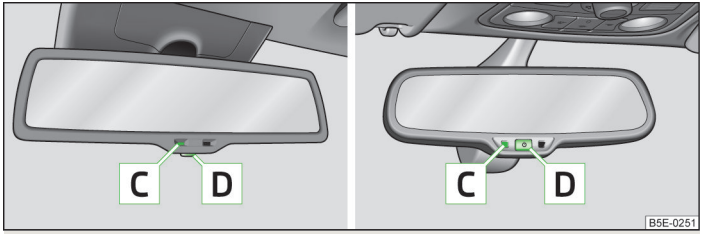

Fig. 45 **Automatic dimming mirror**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

Manual dimming interior mirror

› Adjust the lever towards the windscreen at the lower edge of the mirror (the mirror dims) A » Fig. 44.
› Adjust the lever away from the windscreen at the lower edge of the mirror (home position) B.

Automatic dimming mirror

› Press the button D, the warning light C lights up (the mirror is activated) » Fig. 45.

To deactivate, press the button D again, the warning light C goes out.

If automatic dimming is activated, the mirror dims **automatically** depending on the light striking the mirror from the rear.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 64, ! in section *Introduction*.

Additional interior mirror

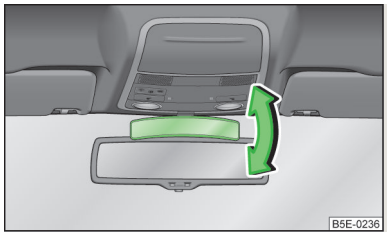

Fig. 46
Additional interior mirror

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

The additional interior mirror allows the driver a wider field of view of the rear seats.

Adjusting the angle

› Take hold of both the upper and lower edge of the mirror such that you are not touching the surface of the mirror.
› Adjust the mirror in direction of arrow to the desired position.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Use the additional interior mirror only to such an extent that you are in full control of your vehicle in all traffic situations.

Exterior mirrors

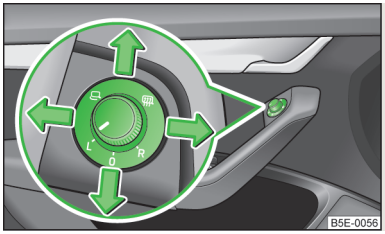

Fig. 47
Rotary knob

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

Mirror heater
› Set the rotary knob into the position ⌇ » Fig. 47.

The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.

Adjusting both mirrors in sync
› Set the rotary dial into position **L** or, on right-hand drive vehicles, into position **R** » Fig. 47. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

The synchronous setting of both mirrors can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Adjusting the front passenger's mirror
› Set the rotary dial into position **R** or, on right-hand drive vehicles, into position **L** » Fig. 47. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Switching off operating control
› Set the rotary knob into the position **0** » Fig. 47.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob
› Set the rotary knob into the position ⇄ » Fig. 47.

It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 50 km/h.

The mirrors are folded back into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position ⇄ to a different one.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key
› Press and hold the ⇄ symbol button on the remote control key.

Folding in requires that all electrical power windows are working » page 47, *Operational faults*.

The exterior mirror is folded back into the driving position when the ignition is switched on.

Folding in of both mirrors can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Automatic dimming mirror
The exterior mirrors are dimmed together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 65.

Tilting surface of front passenger mirror
On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver seat » page 70, the surface of the mirror tilts down slightly when the reverse gear is engaged and the rotary knob is in the position **R** or in position **L** on vehicles with right-hand drive » Fig. 47. This provides an aid in seeing the kerb of the pavement when parking the car.

The mirror returns into its initial position, after the rotary knob is moved out of the position **R** or position **L** on vehicles with right-hand drive, and put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

Tilting the surface of the front passenger mirror can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Memory function for mirrors
On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver seat » page 70 or the memory function for the remote control key » page 70 it is possible to save the position of the exterior mirror when saving the driver seat position.

Seats and useful equipment

Adjusting the seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually adjusting the front seats 68
Electric front seat adjustment 68
Head restraints 69
Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat 70
Memory function of the remote control key 70

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important:
› for safely and quickly reaching the controls;
› for a relaxed, fatigue-free body position;
› **for achieving maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is also functional when the ignition is turned off (even with the ignition key removed). Therefore children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!
- Never carry more people than there are number of seats in the vehicle.

WARNING (Continued)

- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 188, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- At all times, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the person's body size and the seat belt must be attached properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat except objects (e.g. child safety seat) provided for this purpose – risk of accident!

WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions.
- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking » page 121. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seated position in the seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each new driver seat and external mirror position that is saved will overwrite the existing setting.

Manually adjusting the front seats

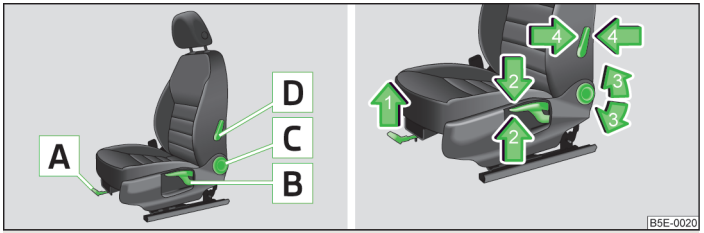

Fig. 48 **Control elements / Settings**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 67.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull the lever A » Fig. 48 in the direction of the arrow **1** and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

› Again push/pull the lever B » Fig. 48 in the direction of one of the arrows **2**.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel C » Fig. 48in the direction of one of the arrows **3**.

Adjusting lumbar support

› Push the lever D » Fig. 48 in the direction of one of the arrows **4**

Electric front seat adjustment

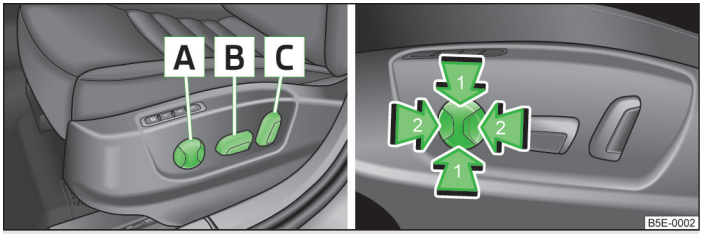

Fig. 49 **Control elements / adjust lumbar support**

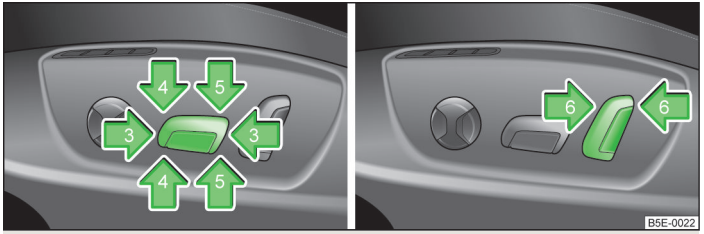

Fig. 50 **Setting: Seating surface / backrest**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 67.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Push the switch B » Fig. 49 in the direction of one of the arrows **3** » Fig. 50.

Set the height of the seat cushion

› Push the switch B » Fig. 49 in the direction of one of the arrows **5** » Fig. 50.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

› Push the switch B » Fig. 49 in the direction of one of the arrows **4** » Fig. 50.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Push the switch C » Fig. 49 in the direction of one of the arrows **6** » Fig. 50.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support
› Push the switch A in the region of one of the arrows **2** » Fig. 49.

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support
› Push the switch A in the region of one of the arrows **1** » Fig. 49.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 70 or the remote control key » page 70.

Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again.

Head restraints

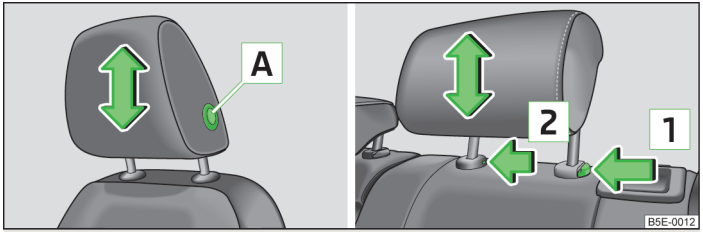

Fig. 51 **Head restraint: front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 67.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head.

Setting height
› Hold the **front head restraints** on the sides with both hands, press and hold the safety button A » Fig. 51 and move the head restraints into position.
› Hold the **rear head restraints** on the sides with both hands and move them upwards » Fig. 51.

To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button 1 with one hand and press the head restraint downwards with the other hand.

The head restraints and the front seats must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers » page 172, *Correct seated position*.

Removing/installing
Only the real head restraints may be removed.

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 51, simultaneously press the locking button into the opening 2 using a flat screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head restraint.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the respective rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

Note

- For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests cannot be adjusted by height or removed.
- The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.

Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat

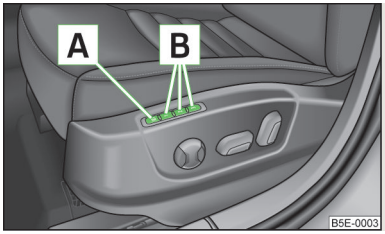

Fig. 52
Memory buttons and SET button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 67.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons B » Fig. 52 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat to the desired position.
› Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 66.
› Press the button SET A » Fig. 52.
› Within 10 seconds after pressing the SET button, press the desired memory button B.

An acknowledgment sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the required memory button B » Fig. 52.
› Move the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control into position R » page 66.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 66.
› Take the vehicle out of gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

› **Tap** the desired memory button B » Fig. 52 when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.
› **Press down** on the desired memory button B when the ignition is switched on and the driver's door is closed.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note

Each time you store the seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward you also have to re-store the setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing.

Memory function of the remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 67.

The automatic storage function of the driver's seat and exterior mirrors position when locking the vehicle can be activated in the memory of the remote control key.

When this function is activated, each time the vehicle is locked, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key. After subsequently unlocking the vehicle with the same key, the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key.

This function can also be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button).*

Activating the function

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 52 on page 70. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

The seat and exterior mirror settings are **not** saved in the memory of the key, which is already saved in the memory button.

The seat can be adjusted to the required position if necessary » page 68.

After locking the vehicle, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key.

Deactivating the function

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.

› Press and hold the SET button A » Fig. 52 on page 70. At the same time, press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note

Once the function has been activated, it remains active until deactivation.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat heaters 71
Armrest front 72
Rear armrest 72
Folding front passenger seat 72
Seat backrests 73

Seat heaters

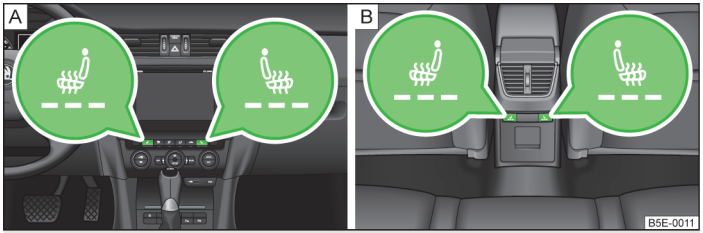

Fig. 53 **Heating: Front seats/ rear seats**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 71.

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Switching on

› Press the corresponding symbol button or » Fig. 53.

By pressing the button once, the heating is switched to the highest intensity - level 3, which is indicated by three of the warning lights underneath the respective switch » Fig. 53 - A or in the respective button » Fig. 53 - B lighting up.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the level of the seat heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath/in the switch.

WARNING

If you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not use the seat heaters if the seats are not occupied by persons or if objects, such as a child seat, bag, etc., are fastened or stored on them. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 200.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 219, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Armrest front

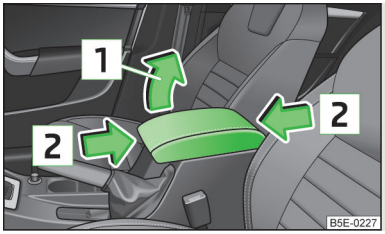

Fig. 54
Adjust armrest

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 71.

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting height

› First of all fold the cover downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 54 into one of the 4 fixed positions.

Move

› Move the lid into the desired position in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 54.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 80.

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the hand-brake.

Rear armrest

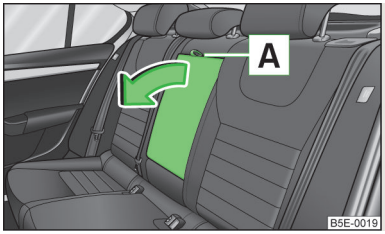

Fig. 55
Fold the armrest forwards

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 71.

Folding forward

› Pull on the loop A » Fig. 55 and fold the arm rest forwards in the direction of the arrow.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 77.

Folding front passenger seat

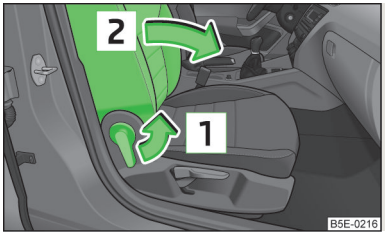

Fig. 56
Folding the front passenger seat forward

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 71.

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

Folding forward

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 56.
› Fold the seat backrest forward in the direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Folding backwards

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 56.
› Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 186.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs away from between the seat cushion and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport objects on the seat backrest which was folded forwards, which:
  - impair driver visibility;
  - make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they are placed under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone;
  - could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manouvre when accelerating sharply.

Seat backrests

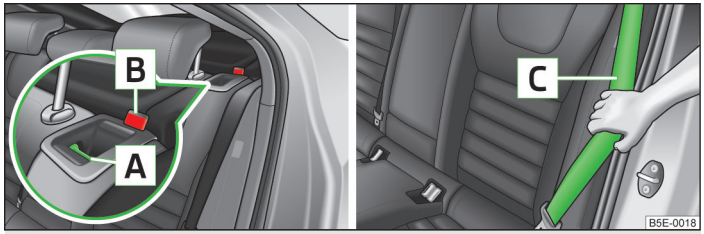

Fig. 57 **Seat backrest: Locking/unlocking**

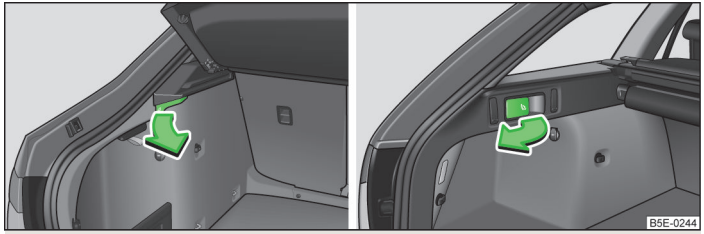

Fig. 58 **Luggage compartment: Folding the rear seat backrest forward (Octavia Estate)**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 71.

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Folding forward
Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests [1].

› Push the lever A » Fig. 57 and fold the seat backrest completely forwards.

Fold forward from the luggage compartment
There is a lever on the **right** side of the luggage compartment for folding the right and the middle rear seat forward.

There is a lever on the **left** side of the luggage compartment for folding the left rear seat forward.

› Pull the corresponding lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 58.

The corresponding seat backrest is folded forward.

Folding backwards
› Hold the rear outer seat belt C » Fig. 57 against the side trim panel.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob A clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

WARNING

- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment if there is sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

CAUTION

- Before folding the seat backrest forward from the luggage compartment, check that there are no objects on the rear seat. When folding the seat backrest forward, they could be damaged or cause damage to the seat backrest and the seat.
- Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

[1] If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder 75
Storage compartment on the driver's side 75
Storage compartments in the doors 76
Holder for reflective vest 76
Storage compartment in the front centre console 77
Cup holders 77
Cigarette lighter 78
Ashtray 78
12-volt power outlet 79
Multimedia holder 79
Storage compartment under the front armrest 80
Glasses storage box 80
Storage compartment on the passenger side 81
Storage compartment under the passenger seat 81
Clothes hook 82
Map pockets on the front seats 82
Storage compartment in rear centre console 82
230-volt power 83
Rear seat backrest with long-cargo channel 84
Removable ski bag 84

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident!

Car park ticket holder

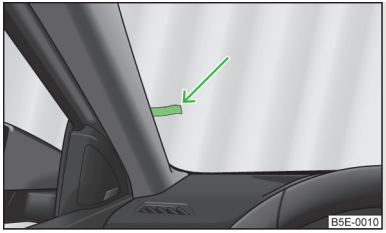

Fig. 59
Windscreen: Parking ticket holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

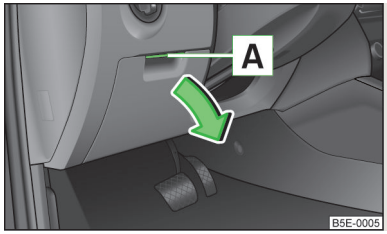

Fig. 60
Storage compartment on the driver's side

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Opening

› Raise the handle A » Fig. 60 and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Storage compartments in the doors

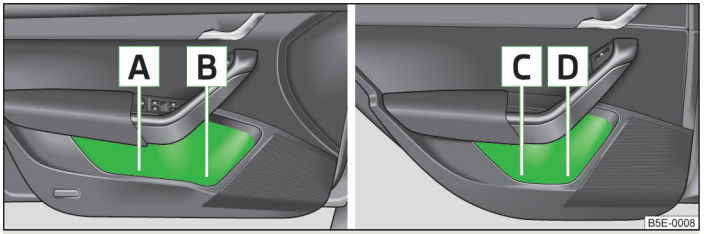

Fig. 61 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The area B » Fig. 61 and D has a bottle holder.

WARNING

Use the area A » Fig. 61 of the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired.

Note

In area D of the stowage compartment of the rear doors, a bottle can be housed with a max. content of 0.5 l.

Holder for reflective vest

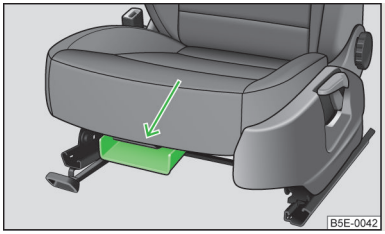

Fig. 62
Driver seat: Holder for reflex vest

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The holder for the reflex vest is located under the driver's seat » Fig. 62.

WARNING

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – otherwise it may fall out of the holder – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedal!

CAUTION

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – risk of damage to the holder.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

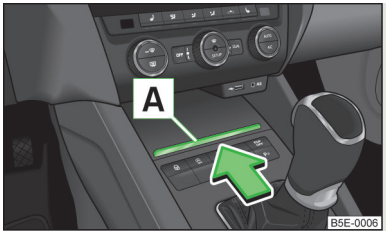

Fig. 63
Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Open/close

› Press on the lid edge A » Fig. 63 in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

The phone box may be located in the stowage compartment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Phonebox*.

WARNING

Never use the storage compartment as an ashtray or for the storage of combustible materials - risk of fire and damage to the storage compartment!

Cup holders

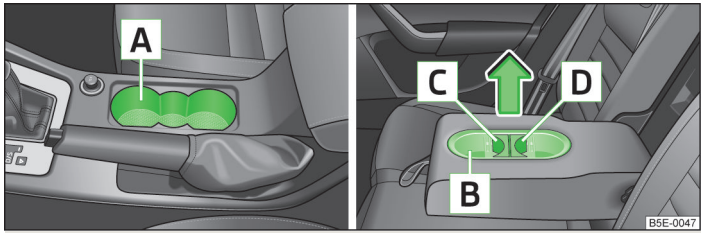

Fig. 64 **Cup holder: in the front centre console/in the rear armrest**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

A Cup holder in front centre console
B Cup holder in rear armrest
C Removable element
D Removable element

You can change the size of the individual openings using the removable elements C and D.

WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter

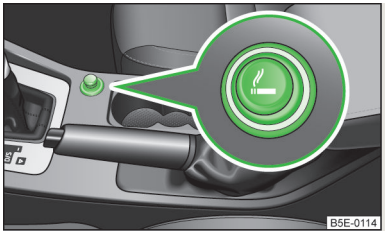

Fig. 65
Cigarette lighter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Using the system

› Press in the button of the cigarette lighter » Fig. 65.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can case burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Note

- The cigarette lighter socket cannot be used as a 12Volt socket.
- Further information » page 200, *Modifications, repairs and technical alterations*.

Ashtray

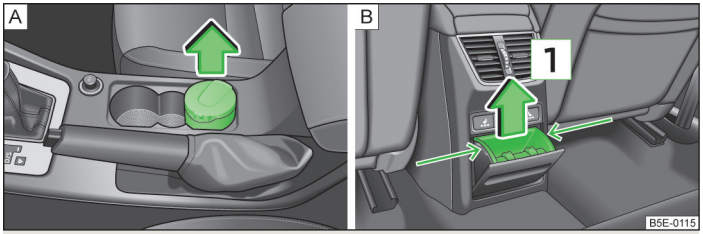

Fig. 66 **Ashtrays: front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

› Pull out the ashtray » Fig. 66 - A in the direction of the arrow.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

› Open the storage compartment » page 82.
› Grasp the insert in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 66 - B.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION

When removing do not hold the ashtray at the cover on the front – risk of breakage.

12-volt power outlet

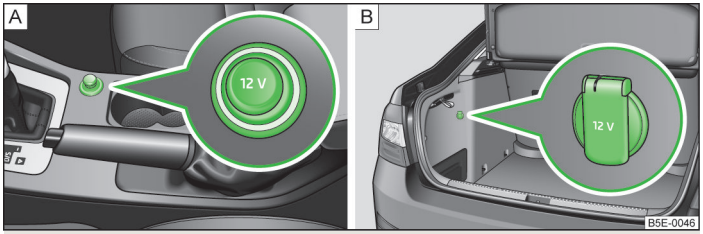

Fig. 67 **12-Volt power socket: in the front centre console/ in the boot**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket
In the front centre console » Fig. 67 - A.

In the boot » Fig. 67 - B.

Use of the 12-volt power socket
› Remove the cover on the power socket » Fig. 67 - A or open the cover on the power socket as appropriate » Fig. 67 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 12-volt power sockets and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » !.

WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Multimedia holder

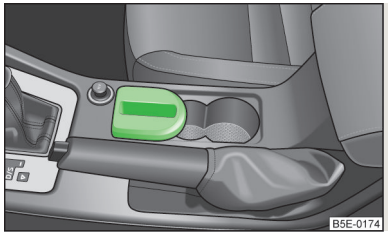

Fig. 68
Multimedia holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The multimedia holder is located in the front centre console » Fig. 68.

You can use this holder to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

WARNING

Never use the holder as an ashtray or for storing flammable objects – risk of fire!

Storage compartment under the front armrest

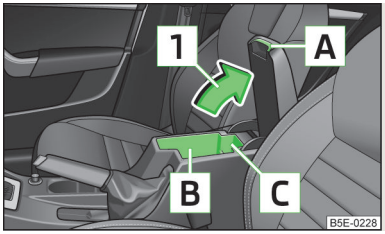

Fig. 69
Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Opening

› Pull and open the cover of the armrest using the handle A in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 69.

Closing

› Open the lid to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 69.

The area B » Fig. 69 of the stowage compartment is designed for the storage of objects with a maximum size of 98 mm x 104 mm x 142 mm.

The area C of the stowage compartment is designed for the storage of smaller objects.

! WARNING

For safety reasons, the storage compartment should not be opened to an end stop while driving.

Glasses storage box

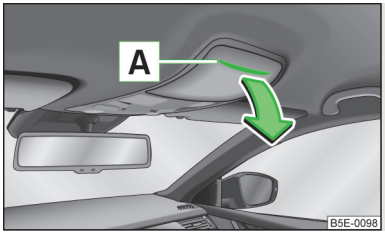

Fig. 70
Opening the glasses storage box

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Opening

› Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in the area A » Fig. 70.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid on the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 70 until it audibly locks into place.

! WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed!
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

! CAUTION

Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – they may be damaged.

Storage compartment on the passenger side

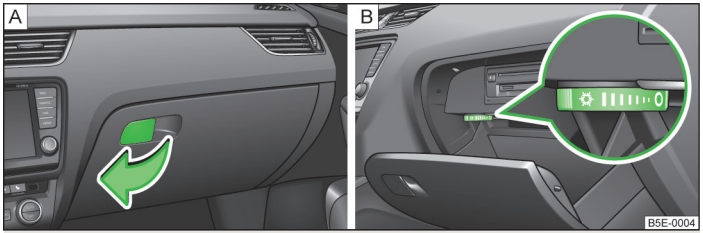

Fig. 71 **Open storage compartment/control cooling of storage compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

A pen and credit card holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Opening

› Pull the handle of the flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 71 – A and fold down the flap.

Closing

› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Cooling

› Use the rotary switch » Fig. 71 – B to open/close the air supply.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

When the stowage compartment is opened, a light lights up.

Storage compartment under the passenger seat

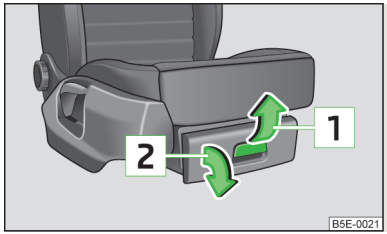

Fig. 72
Front passenger seat: Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Opening

› Pull the handle to position 1 » Fig. 72.

The compartment opens out in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Hold the compartment firmly by the handle and shut it in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 72.
› Keep hold of the handle until the compartment is closed.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Clothes hook

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Map pockets on the front seats

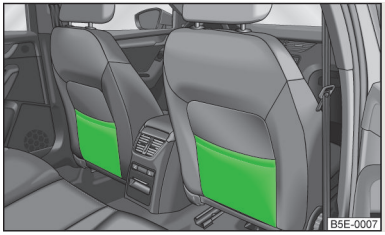

Fig. 73
Map pockets

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The pockets intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc. are provided on the reverse side of the front seat rests » Fig. 73.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in rear centre console

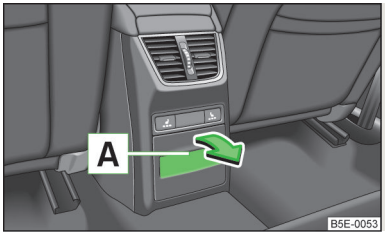

Fig. 74
Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The storage compartment is equipped with a removable insert.

Open/close

› Pull the handle A » Fig. 74 on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

230-volt power

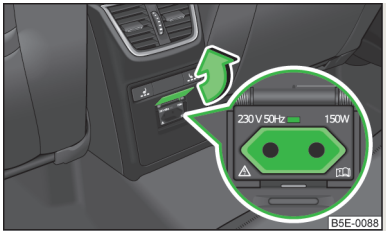

Fig. 75
Centre console at rear: 230-Volt power socket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Use

› Fold out the lid on the power socket in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 75.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 230-Volt power socket can only be used when the ignition is switched on » !.

When the plug on the electrical appliance is inserted into the power socket, the child safety lock is released, and the power socket is activated.

LED display

› Permanent green light: The power socket is activated.
› Flashing red light: The power socket is temporarily deactivated.

The power socket is deactivated automatically when the amperage is too high, the temperature is too high or the battery charge state is too low.

When the reasons for the deactivation no longer apply, the power socket will be re-activated automatically. Then re-activate connected devices which are switched on » !.

WARNING

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- The power socket and the connected electrical devices only work if the ignition is switched on!
- Improper use can lead to serious injury or fire. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle – risk of injury!
- Safely stow away all connected devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- Do not pour liquids into the power socket – risk of death! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The connected appliances may behave differently to when connected to the mains.
- The connected devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
- The child lock on the 230 Volt power socket is unlocked when using energised adapters and extension cables – risk of injury!
- Do no insert any conductive objects into the contacts of the power socket, e.g. knitting needs – risk of death!

CAUTION

- Place the connector on the electrical device into the power socket as far as it can go to create a connection between the contacts.
- If the connector of the electrical device is not inserted fully into the power socket, the child safety lock might release, and the power socket be activated. The electrical device is nevertheless not connected.
- The 230-volt power socket is temporarily disabled when the engine starts and the LED flashes red. After starting the engine, the power socket is re-activated automatically.
- Do not connect any lamps with neon filaments to the 230 V power socket - risk of damaging the lamp.
- A larger current surge may arise in some power supplies (e.g. for notebooks) when connecting them to a 230 V power socket- this will automatically deactivate the power socket. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the consumer and connect the power supply to the power socket first, followed by the consumer.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Rear seat backrest with long-cargo channel

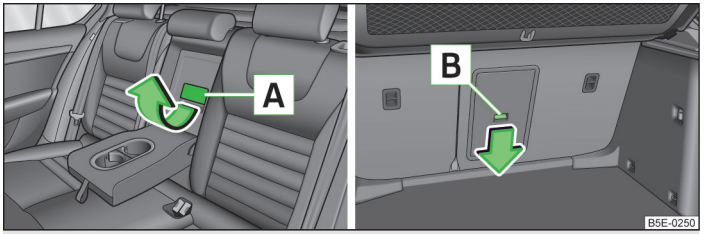

Fig. 76 **Rear seats: Cover handle/boot: Unlock button**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

After folding the rear armrest and cover up, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the removable through-loading bag with skis can be pushed. The armrest and cover can be folded forward from the passenger compartment or the boot.

Opening from the passenger compartment

› Fold the rear armrest dow (not as far as the stop) » page 72.
› Pull the handle A » Fig. 76 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover downwards.

Opening from the boot

› Push the unlock button B » Fig. 76 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing

› Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button B » Fig. 76 is not visible from the boot.

! WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, removable through-loading bag » page 84.

Removable ski bag

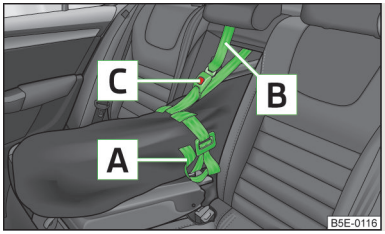

Fig. 77
Securing the through-loading bag

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The removable through-loading bag is solely used for transporting skis.

Loading

› Open the luggage compartment lid.
› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 84.
› Place the empty, removable through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Push the skis into the removable through-loading bag from the boot » !.
› Close the through-loading bag.

Securing

› Tighten the strap A on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 77.
› Fold the seat backrest a little forward.
› Guide the securing strap B through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Insert the securing strap B into the lock C until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap B » Fig. 77.
- The strap A must hold the skis tight.

WARNING (Continued)

- Make sure that the strap A holds the skis in front of the binding (also refer to imprint on the removable through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

Note

- The through-loading bag is foreseen for four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the removable through-loading bag.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the removable through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.
- The removable through-loading bag must never be folded together or stowed when moist.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements 86
Fixing nets 87
Folding double hooks 87
Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate) 88
Floor covering 88
Double sided floor covering 88
Luggage net 89
Luggage compartment cover 89
Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate) 90
Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks 91
Storage compartment in the luggage compartment 92
Storage compartments under the floor covering 92
Multifunction box 93
Multifunction box (Octavia Estate) 94

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the nets » page 86.

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg “ ”. You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this “object” flies through the interior compartment and hits an occupant.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the boot lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Store the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- Please note that the handling properties of the vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as the centre of gravity can be displaced – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The items carried in the luggage compartment must be stored in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres are undertaken – risk of injury!

WARNING (Continued)

- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 174, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the luggage compartment!

CAUTION

Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the following:
- heating elements in the rear window;
- elements of the aerial integrated in the rear window;
- elements of the aerial integrated in the rear side windows (Octavia Estate).

Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 221, *Service life of tyres*.

Fastening elements

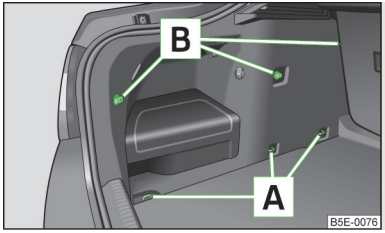

Fig. 78
Fastening elements Octavia

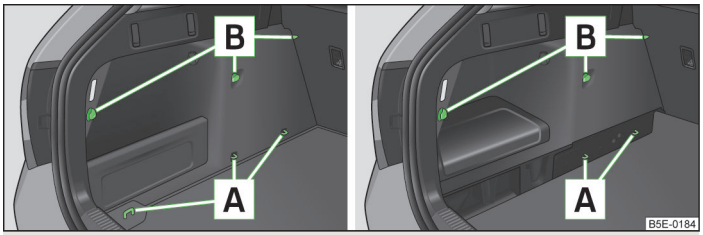

Fig. 79 **Fastening elements Octavia Estate: Equipment without variable loading floor/equipment with variable loading floor**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The luggage compartment comprises the following fastening elements. » Fig. 78 or » Fig. 79.

A Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.

B Fastening elements and loops[1] **only** for fastening fixing nets.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the lashing eyes A is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

[1] The upper front lashing eye is located underneath the folding rear seat backrest.

Fixing nets

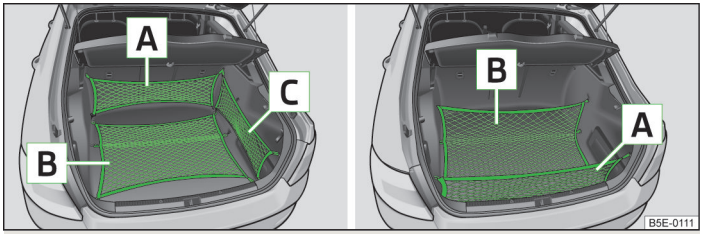

Fig. 80 **Fastening examples for nets**

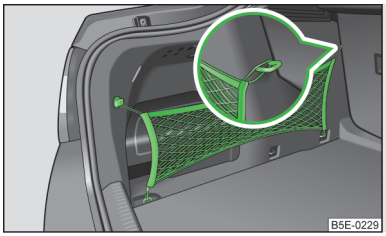

Fig. 81
Fastening vertical pocket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

Examples for attaching the fixing nets» Fig. 80.

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.

Folding double hooks

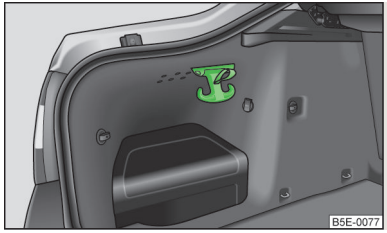

Fig. 82
Folding double hooks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The folding double hook is used to affix small items of luggage, e.g. bags.

The folding double hook can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

CAUTION

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate)

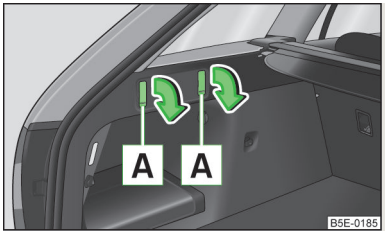

Fig. 83
Foldable hooks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

Foldable hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› Press on the lower portion of the hook A and then fold it in direction of the arrow » Fig. 83.

The front foldable hooks are also used to fasten the rear bar of the multifunction box » page 94.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Floor covering

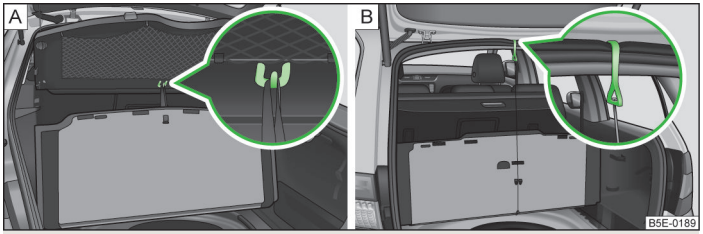

Fig. 84 **Fixing the floor covering: Octavia/Octavia Estate**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The raised floor covering of the luggage compartment can be fixed (e.g. when handling the spare wheel):
› Octavia: With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 84 – A;
› Octavia Estate: With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid » Fig. 84 - B.

CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed in the Octavia Estate only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 100 on page 96.

Double sided floor covering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor » page 94 - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Luggage net

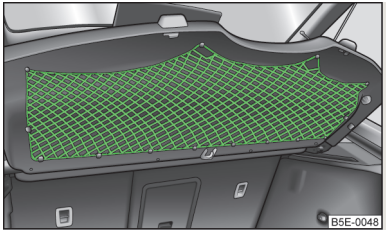

Fig. 85
Luggage net

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The luggage net is located on the underside of the luggage compartment cover.

The net is designed for transporting lighter objects.

WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg in the net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net – risk of net damage.

Luggage compartment cover

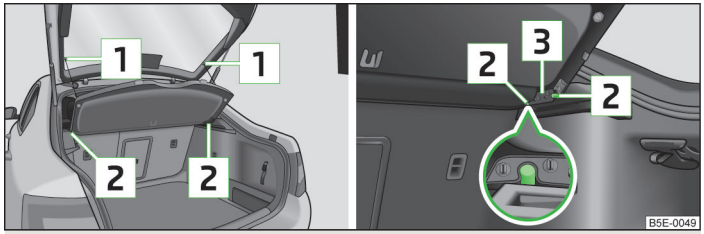

Fig. 86 **Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover**

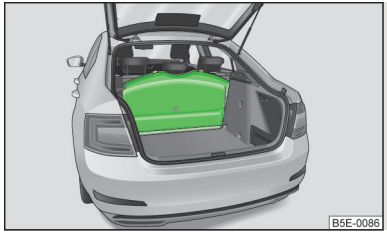

Fig. 87
Luggage compartment cover stowed behind the rear seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

Removing

› Unhook the support straps 1 » Fig. 86.
› On the underside of the cover, in the area between the holders, press 2.
› Remove the cover.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest » Fig. 87.

Install

› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› The mounts of the cover 3 » Fig. 86 must be positioned above the holders 2 of the side trim panel.
› Press on the upper side of the cover so that the mounts fully interlock in the holders.
› Hook the support straps 1 on the boot lid.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

CAUTION

- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.
- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.
  - The mounts of the cover 3 » Fig. 86 must be interlocked in the holders of the side trim panel 2.
  - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the opened position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the opened cover and the rear backrest.

Note

Opening the boot lid also lifts up the boot cover.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)

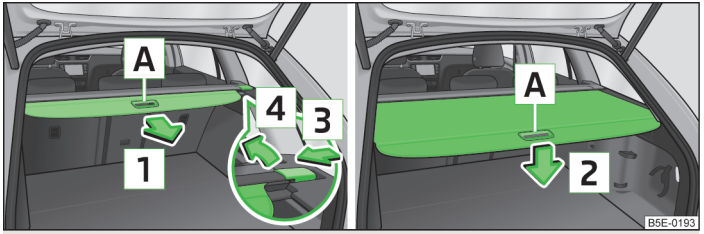

Fig. 88 **Pull out and remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover/roll up roll-up luggage compartment cover**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

Pulling out

› Grasp the cover on the handle A » Fig. 88 and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it clicks.

Folding

› Push the cover in the area of the handle A » Fig. 88 in the direction of the arrow 2.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled-up luggage compartment cover can be removed (e.g. for the transport of bulky objects).

› Push on the side of the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 88 and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 4.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

The removed luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the storage compartment under the variable loading floor » page 91, *Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks*.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover.

Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks

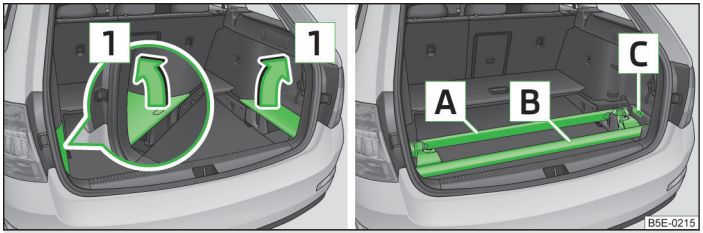

Fig. 89 **Removing the side covers/stowing roof racks properly**

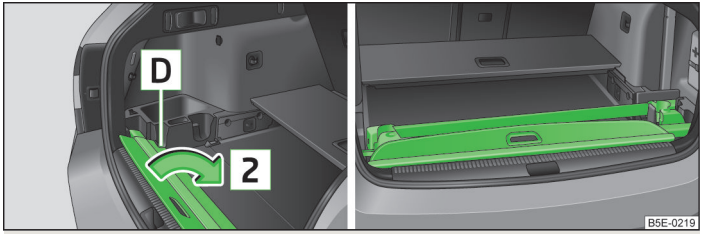

Fig. 90 **Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover/stowing roof racks and roll-up luggage compartment cover properly**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover and the roof racks can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

Stowing the roof racks

› Fold the variable loading floor in the upper position » page 96.
› Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 89.
› Insert the front roof rack A into the front recesses of the side trim.
› Insert the rear roof rack B into the rear recesses of the side trim.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 95.

Stowing the roll-up luggage compartment cover

› Fold the variable loading floor in the upper position » page 96.
› Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 89.
› Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim D » Fig. 90 on the left.
› Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 89.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 95.

When stowing **both** the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover, the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover should overlap the rear roof rack » Fig. 90.

Note

▪ Before stowing the roof rack, pull out the key from the carrier, otherwise it could be damaged.
▪ The keys to the roof rack can be stowed in the recess C » Fig. 89.

Storage compartment in the luggage compartment

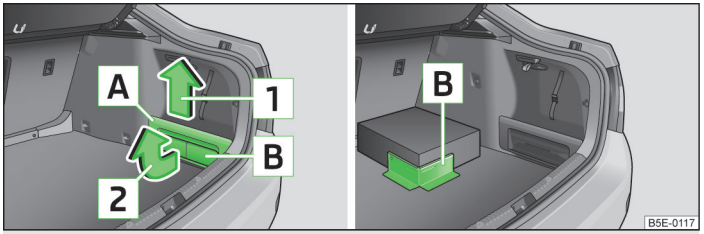

Fig. 91 **Removing stowage compartment and cargo element/example of attaching an item of luggage using the cargo element**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

Increasing the size of the boot

› Remove the cover of the storage compartment A in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 91.

Securing items of luggage

› The cargo element B (part of the cover of the storage compartment) in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 91.
› Secure the cargo element with Velcro on the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

The stowage compartment can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

CAUTION

- The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.
- The cargo element is designed for attaching objects with a maximum gross weight of 8 kg.
- When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage it or the luggage compartment lining.

Note

We recommend you use the cargo element to secure items of luggage behind the rear seats.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

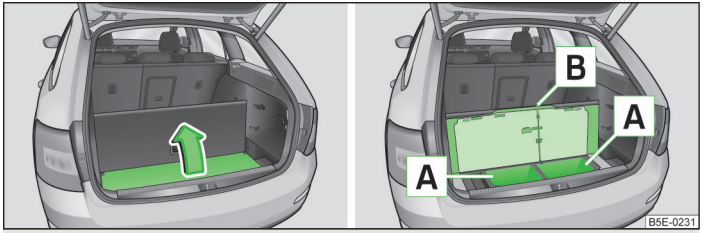

Fig. 92 **Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The storage compartments are located under the floor covering of the luggage compartment in vehicles without a spare wheel.

Use

› Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 96.
› Remove the fog floor covering in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 92.
› Fix the hook B to the top edge of the variable loading floor.

It is possible to store also objects with larger heights in the storage compartments A, thereby using the maximum height of the luggage compartment.

CAUTION

- An item of luggage weighing up to 15 kg can be stored in each storage compartment.
- Do not stored any sharp objects in the storage compartments.
- Do not load the storage compartments at specific points or they may be damaged.
- Place the objects carefully into the storage compartments to avoid damage to the compartments.

Multifunction box

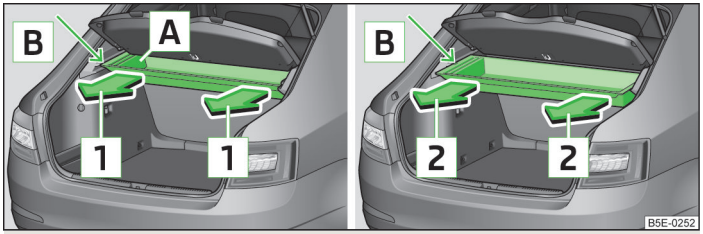

Fig. 93 **Multifunction box: Sliding out/removing**

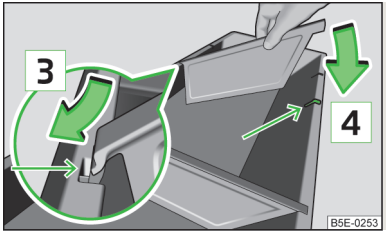

Fig. 94
Multifunction box: Insert lateral carrier rail

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

Inserting/removing the box

› Remove the box with box hands in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 93 as far as the stop B.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

Removing/inserting the box

› Remove the box with both hands in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 93 after passing the stop B.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

Inserting/removal lateral carrier rails

The multifunction box under the luggage compartment cover can be divided by means of two lateral carrier rails A » Fig. 93.

You can insert/remove the later carrier rails when the box has been removed as far as the stop B » Fig. 93.

› Insert the catches on the lateral carrier rail underneath the front edge of the box 3 in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 94.
› Secure the other side of the lateral carrier rail in the hole 4 the direction of the arrow.

Removal is carried out in the reverse order.

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 2.5 kg.
- Prevent objects stored in the multifunction box from slipping at all times using the lateral carrier rails.
- Before driving, the box must be pushed in so that it is not damaged.

Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)

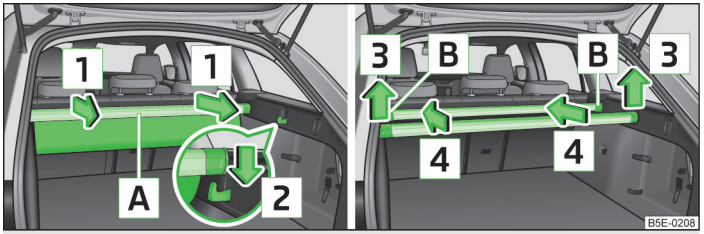

Fig. 95 **Multifunction box: Pull / Push**

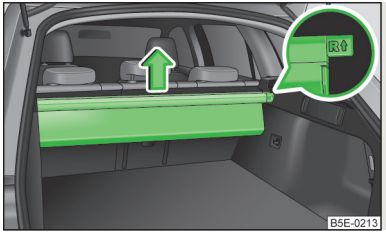

Fig. 96
Remove multifunction box

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The multifunction box under the roll-up luggage compartment cover is provided for the storage of clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

Pulling out

› Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment » page 88.
› Grasp the rear bar A » Fig. 95 with both hands and pull out the complete box in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow 2 all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

› Remove the rear bar from the hook in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 95.
› Push in the complete multifunction box in the direction of the arrow 4.
› Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends B.
› Fold back the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Removing/inserting

› Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 90.
› Remove the multifunction box from the receptacle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 96.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

› When inserting, push the end of the bar marked R into the right receptacle and the end of the bar marked L into the left receptacle. The arrows should be pointing forward » Fig. 96.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Positions of the variable loading floor ____ 95
Fold up variable loading floor ____ 96
Dividing the luggage compartment ____ 96

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » page 95.

Note

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects, for example, the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover, roof cross bars, etc. » page 91.

Positions of the variable loading floor

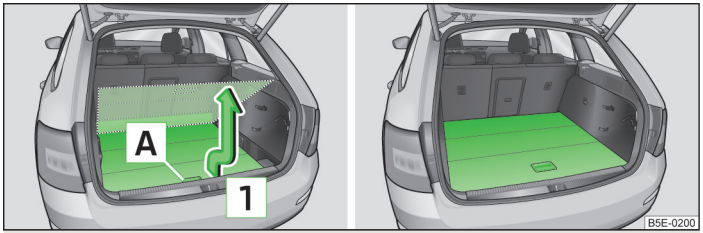

Fig. 97 **Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position**

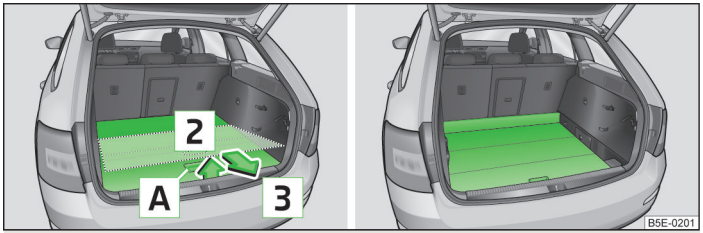

Fig. 98 **Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 94.

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 97.
› Lift the variable loading floor about 20 cm, pull it to yourself and raise it in the direction of the arrow 1 to the level of the roll-up luggage compartment cover until it clicks.

After an audible click, the variable loading floor can be stowed in the upper position by pushing it forward.

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to store away objects.

Set into the lower position

› Check that there are no objects in the space under the variable loading floor.
› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 98.
› Lift the variable loading floor about 10 cm in the direction of the arrow 2 and pull it back in the direction of the arrow 3.

The variable loading floor moves automatically to the lower position where it can be stored by pressing it forward.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions » page 96 or used for dividing the luggage compartment » page 96.

Fold up variable loading floor

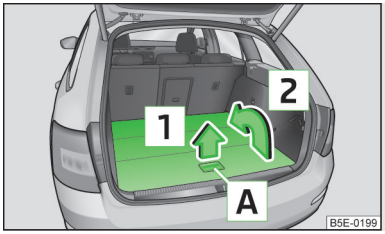

Fig. 99
fold up variable loading floor

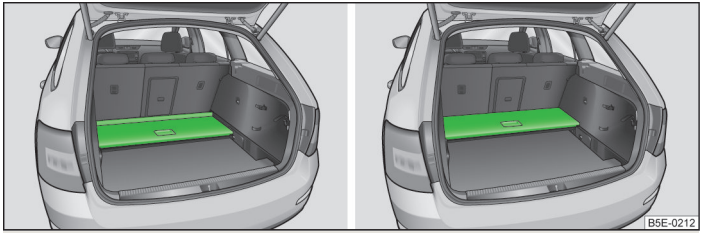

Fig. 100 **Variable loading floor folded up: in the lower position / in the upper position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 94.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in the lower and the upper position » Fig. 100.

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 99 and lift in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Dividing the luggage compartment

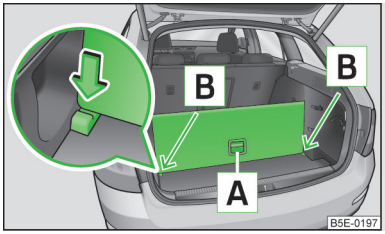

Fig. 101
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 94.

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor in the lower and upper position.

› Raise the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 101.
› Push the rear edge of the variable loading floor into the grooves B in the direction of the arrow.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves B.

Net partition (Octavia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the net partition behind the rear seats 97
Using the net partition behind the front seats 98
Removing and refitting the net partition housing 98

WARNING

- Check that the crossbar of the net partition is hung firmly into the receptacles D » Fig. 102 on page 97 and C » Fig. 104 on page 98.
- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment if there is sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

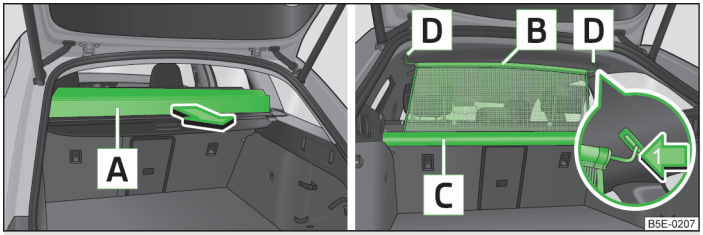

Fig. 102 **Folding out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover/net partition behind the rear seats in the pulled-out state**

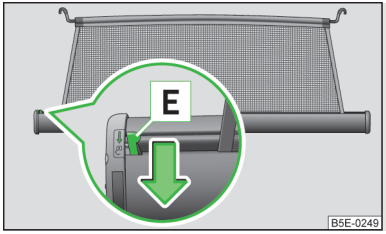

Fig. 103
Net partition: Release lever

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 96.

Pulling out

› Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 102.
› Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar B from the housing C.
› Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles D.
› On the other side, press on the crossbar and hook it into the appropriate receptacle D.

If the cross-bar is hooked into the receptacle D for example, the press on the cross bar in the direction of arrow **1** and insert into the receptacle to the right D.

› Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the opposite direction of the arrow.

Folding

› Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 102.
› Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles D, first on one side, then on the other side.
› **Hold** the crossbar B in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing C without being damaged.
› Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the opposite direction of the arrow.

CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever E in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 103.

Note

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, the roll-up luggage compartment cover can be removed » page 90.

Using the net partition behind the front seats

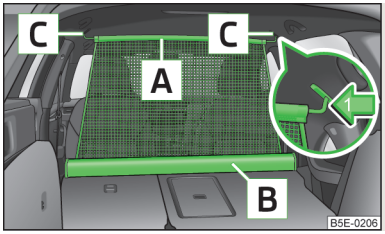

Fig. 104
Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 96.

Pulling out

› Fold the rear seats forward » page 73.
› Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar A from the housing B » Fig. 104.
› Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles C.
› On the other side, press on the crossbar and hook it into the appropriate receptacle C.

If the crossbar is hooked into the receptacle C to the left for example, then press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow **1** and insert into the receptacle C to the right.

Folding

› Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles C, first on one side, then on the other side.
› **Hold** the crossbar A in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing B without being damaged.
› Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 73.

! CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 103 on page 97.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

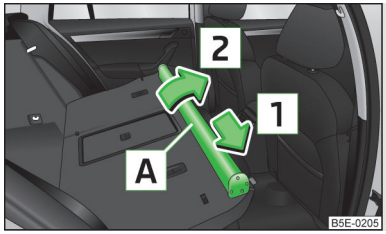

Fig. 105
Rear seats: Removing the net partition housing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 96.

Removing

› Fold the rear seats forward » page 73.
› Open the rear right door » page 37.
› Push the net partition housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 105.

Install

› Insert the recesses on the net partition housing into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
› Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 105 as far as the stop.
› Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 73.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points 99
Roof load 100

WARNING

- The items which you transport on the roof rack must be reliably attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only use roof rack systems approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.
- If other roof rack systems are used or if the roof bars are not fitted correctly, any resulting damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. Therefore observe the supplied fitting instructions for the roof rack system are observed.
- On models fitted with a sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the luggage compartment lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

Note

The removed roof rack for the Octavia Estate can be stowed in the stowage compartment under the variable loading floor » page 91, *Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks*.

Attachment points

Does not apply to the Octavia Estate.

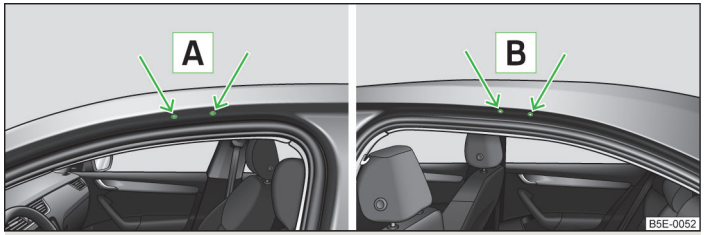

Fig. 106 **Attachment points for roof bars**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

Installation location of the attachment points for roof bars » Fig. 106:

A Front attachment points
B Rear attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air conditioning system

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlets 102
Using the cooling system economically 102
Operational problems 103

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » page 106 or for Climatronic » page 109.

WARNING

For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!

Note

- The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlets

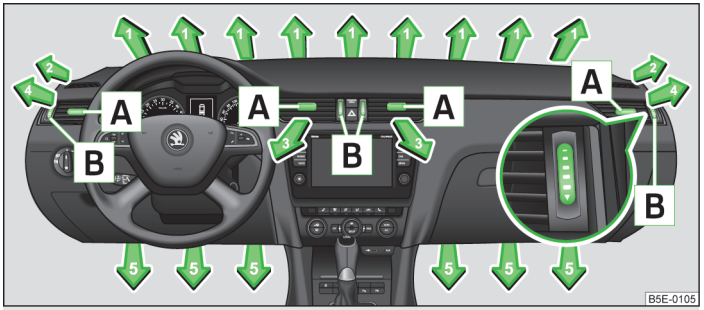

Fig. 107 **Air vents at the front**

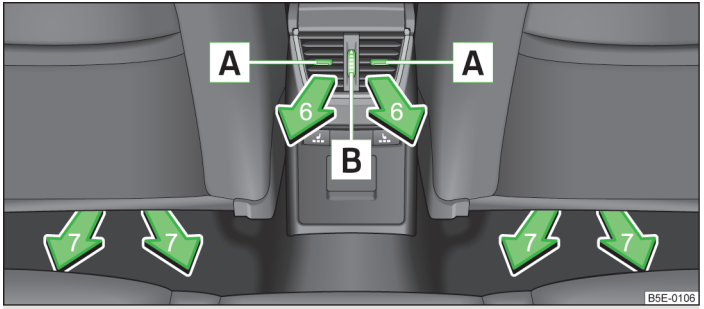

Fig. 108 **Air vents at the rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 101.

Warmed, unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the air outlet vents according to the setting of the regulator of the heating or the air conditioning system and the atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 107 and **6** » Fig. 108 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Changing the air flow direction

› To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster A » Fig. 107 or » Fig. 108 upward or downward.
› To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A » Fig. 107 or » Fig. 108 to the left or right.

Open/close

› Turn the wheel B » Fig. 107 or » Fig. 108 upwards or downwards.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 6
	4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 5, 6, 7

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with any objects, of any kind.

Using the cooling system economically

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 101.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

If the windows are open, the cooling system should not be on while driving.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also reduced when fuel is saved » page 126, *Economical driving and environmental sustainability*.

Operational problems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 101.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 245.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 11.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Heating

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements 103
Adjusting 104
Recirculated air mode 104

Control elements

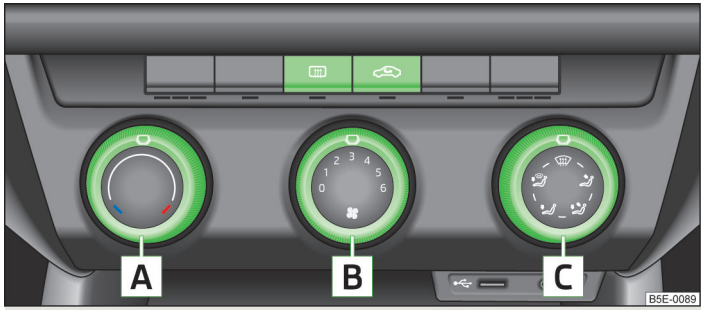

Fig. 109 **Heating: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 109**:**

A Set the temperature (turn to the left: Turn to the right to reduce the temperature: increase temperature)
B Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blower off, stage 6: the highest blower stage)
C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 102
Switch the rear window heater on/off » page 60
Open/close the fresh air supply (recirculation) » page 104

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Adjusting

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Recommended basic settings of the heating controls for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial » Fig. 109 on page 103			Button	Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 107 on page 102
	A	B	C		
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	4-5		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	3-5		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Rapid heating	To the right up to the stop	4-5		Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2-4		Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode – ventilation	To the left up to the stop	1-6		Do not switch on	Opening

a) Warmer air is directed to the footwell than to the upper part of the body.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 107 on page 102 in the open position in all operating modes.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button.

The warning light below the button lights up.

› Press the symbol button again.

The warning light below the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 109 on page 103 is turned to position. Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements ____ 105
adjusting ____ 106
Recirculated air mode ____ 106

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ **A/C** » Fig. 110 on page 105 switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature above approx. +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-6).

Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Note

We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Control elements

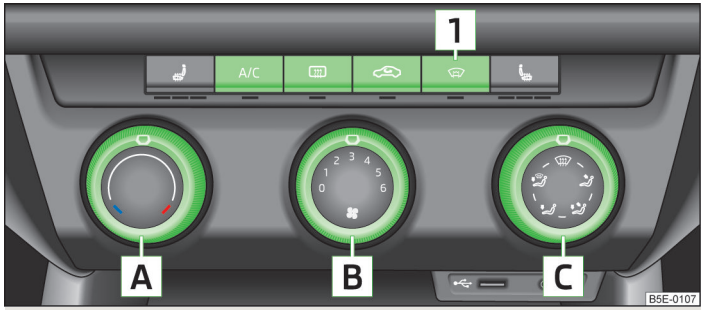

Fig. 110 **Air conditioning: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 110**:**

- A Set the temperature (turn to the left: Turn to the right to reduce the temperature: increase temperature)
- B Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blower off, stage 6: the highest blower stage)
- C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 102
- 1 Depending on equipment:
  - › Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 60
  - › Switching the auxiliary heater on/off » page 111
- **A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off
- Switch the rear window heater on/off » page 60
- Open/close the fresh air supply (recirculation) » page 106

Note

The warning light in the symbol button **A/C** lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system are met » page 105. By lighting up of the warning light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

adjusting

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Recommended basic settings of the control elements of the air conditioning system for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial » Fig. 110 on page 105			Button » Fig. 110 on page 105		Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 107 on page 102
	A	B	C	A/C		
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows[a]	Desired temperature	4-6		Automatically switched on[b]	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Rapid heating	To the right up to the stop	4-6		Switched off	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	1-4	/	Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening
Rapid cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 6, then 2 - 3		Activated	Automatically switched on[c]	Opening
Comfortable cooling	Desired temperature	1-3	/[d]	Activated	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode – ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position	/[d]	Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening

[a] We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.
[b] The automatic activation can be turned off by pressing the symbol button **A/C**.
[c] The automatic activation can be turned off by pressing the symbol button .
[d] Warmer air is directed to the footwell than to the upper part of the body.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 107 on page 102 in the open position in all operating modes.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button .

The warning light below the button lights up.

› Press the symbol button again.

The warning light below the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 110 on page 105 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements 107
Automatic mode 108
Switching the cooling system on/off 108
Setting temperature 108
Automatic recirculated air mode 109
Controlling blower 109
Defrosting windscreen 110

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ **A/C** » Fig. 111 on page 107 switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature above approx. +2 °C.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

Note

We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Control elements

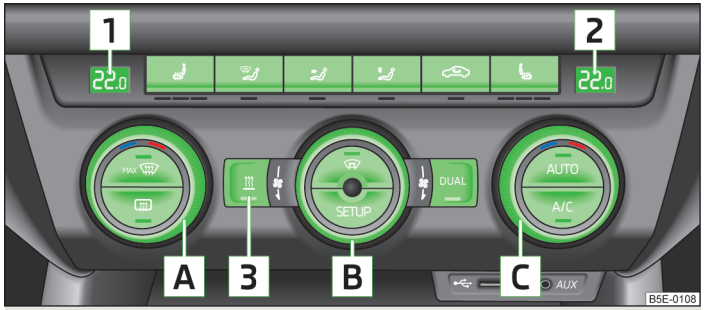

Fig. 111 **Climatronic: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 111:

- **A** Adjust the temperature for the left side or for both sides » page 108
- **B** Adjust the blower speed » page 109
- **C** Adjust the temperature for the right side » page 108
- **1** Display the temperature setting for the left side
- **2** Display the temperature setting for the right side
- **3** Depending on equipment:
  - › Switching the auxiliary heater on/off » page 111
  - › **OFF** Switching Climatronic system off
- Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 71
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Switch automatic air distribution control on/off » page 109
- Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 71
- MAX Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off » page 110
- Switch the rear window heater on/off » page 60
- Switch the windscreen heater on/off » page 60

SETUP Adjust Climatronic in the Infotainment
DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off » page 108
AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 108
A/C Switch the cooling system on/off » page 108

Note

The interior temperature sensor is located between the symbol buttons and **SETUP**. Do not stick anything on or cover the sensor, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic.

Automatic mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive.

Setting the individual operating modes » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

Climatronic is set to the medium setting at the factory.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year
› Set the desired temperature, we recommend 22 °C.
› Press the symbol button **AUTO** » Fig. 111 on page 107.
› Move the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 107 on page 102 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode.

The currently selected mode is displayed in the Infotainment display.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed.

Switching the cooling system on/off

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

› Press the symbol button **A/C**.

The warning light in the button lights up.

› Press the symbol button **A/C** again.

The warning light in the button goes out.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

For both sides
› Turn the control dial **A** » Fig. 111 on page 107 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** does not light up.

For the right side
› Turn the control dial **C** » Fig. 111 on page 107 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** lights up.

If the warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** is lit, the temperature for both sides cannot be set with the control dial **A**. This function can be resumed by pressing the symbol button **DUAL**. The warning light in the button goes out.

The interior temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +16 °C is selected, a blue symbol lights up on the corresponding control dial.

If a temperature higher than +29 °C is selected, a red symbol lights up on the corresponding control dial.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Automatic recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched off.

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior. When the automatic air distribution control is switched on, an air quality sensor measures the concentration of pollutants in the drawn in air.

If the air quality sensor does not switch on automatic recirculated air mode when there is an unpleasant smell, you can switch in on manually.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button .

The warning light below the button lights up.

› Pres the symbol button again; the warning light below the button goes out; if necessary, press the symbol button **AUTO** again.

Switching on and off is also possible in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the symbol button **AUTO** when the windscreen is demisted.
- The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Controlling blower

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

The blower stage can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

› Turn the control dial B » Fig. 111 on page 107 to the left or right to increase or decrease the blower speed.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed in the control dial B when the respective number of warning lights come on.

WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button MAX » Fig. 111 on page 107.
› Press the symbol button MAX again or press the symbol button **AUTO**.

More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** » Fig. 107 on page 102. The temperature control is controlled automatically.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching on/off ____ 111
Radio remote control ____ 111

Conditions for switching on the auxiliary heating (parking heating and ventilation), hereinafter referred to only as auxiliary heating.

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
✓ A set time is activated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.
✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).
✓ The blower is switched on.
✓ The air outlet vents are open.
✓ The air outlet is set to position or .

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Auxiliary heating (parking heating)

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) can be used when stationary, when the engine is switched off to preheat the vehicle and while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heater (parking heater) functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) also warms up the engine.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. The coolant warms up the air, which flows into the passenger compartment (if the blower speed is not set to zero).

WARNING

- The auxiliary heater (independent vehicle heater) must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating (parking heating) must not be running during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located underneath the vehicle. Therefore, if you wish to operate the auxiliary heating (parking heating), do not park the vehicle in such a way that the exhaust gases can come into contact with highly flammable materials (e.g. dry grass) or easily inflammable substances (e.g. spilt fuel) – risk of fire.

CAUTION

- The running auxiliary heating (parking heating) consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the auxiliary heater switches itself off.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located underneath the vehicle, must not be clogged up and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.

Note

- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on if it has reached a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the auxiliary heating and cooling system operates properly.

Switching on/off

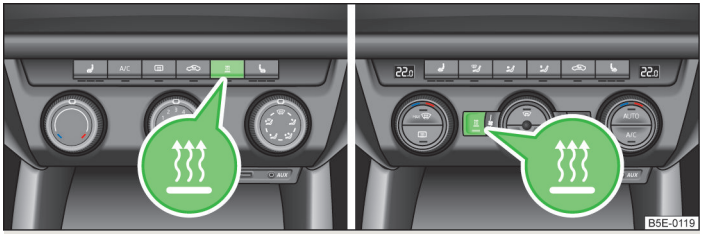

Fig. 112 **Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 110.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) can be switched on/off as follows.

Manually switching on

- using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button lights up » Fig. 112;

ON by using the radio remote control » page 111.

Manually switching off

- using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button goes out » Fig. 112;

OFF by using the radio remote control » page 111.

After switching the system off, the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the auxiliary heater.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump runs for a short period.

Switching on automatically
The auxiliary heater is switched on according to the Infotainment settings » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

When automatic switching on is activated, the indicator light in the symbol button lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.

Switching off automatically

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) is switched off:
- Depending on the settings in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings*;
- if the fuel level has reached the reserve area (the warning icon lights up),
- if the charge state of the vehicle battery is too low » page 215.

Radio remote control

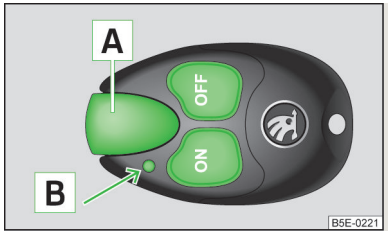

Fig. 113
Auxiliary heater: Radio remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 110.

Explanation of graphic

A	Aerial
B	Warning light
ON	Switch on the auxiliary heating
OFF	Switch off the auxiliary heating

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating on or off, hold the remote control vertical, with the aerial pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback:

Display warning light B » Fig. 113	Description
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off:
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 239.

CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Steering

Introduction

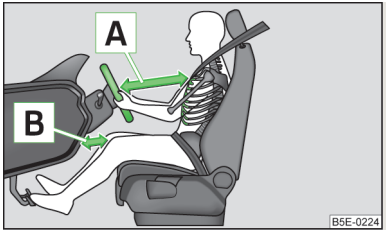

Fig. 114
Correct seated position for the driver

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the steering wheel position ____ 114
Power steering ____ 114

WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A » Fig. 114 between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm. Adjust the distance between the legs and the dash panel in the knee airbag area so that there is a distance of at least 10 cm B. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidently change during the journey – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- If the steering wheel is adjusted further towards the head, the protection provided by the driver airbag in the event of an accident is reduced. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.

WARNING

- When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position 2 » Fig. 116 on page 115 (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, it could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel – risk of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise the steering wheel could block – risk of accident!

Note

We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

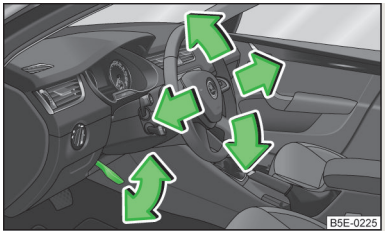

Fig. 115
Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 113.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› First of all adjust the driver's seat » page 67.
› Pull the lever below the steering wheel down » Fig. 115.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
› Push the lever upwards to the stop.

Power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 113.

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

It is still possible to fully steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (e.g. vehicle being towed in). However, greater physical effort is required to turn the steering wheel.

Steering force assistance can be influenced by the selection of driving mode » page 156.

Start and stop the engine with the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobiliser 115
Ignition lock 115
Starting the engine 115
Stopping the engine 116

Starting and stopping the engine on vehicles with the KESSY system » page 116.

The engine can only be started with an appropriate original key.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

! WARNING

- When leaving the vehicle, the ignition must always be removed. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could, for example, start the engine – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases of the engine contain besides the odourless and colourless carbon monoxide a poisonous gas – risk of life! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

! CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- If the engine does not start after the second attempt, the fuse for the electric fuel pump (in petrol engines) or for the control unit for the glow plug system or the relay for the glow plug system and fuel pump (in diesel engines) could be faulty. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 243, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

▪ Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
▪ Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 235.
▪ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Electronic immobiliser

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Immobilizer active.
IMMOBILIZER ACTIVE

Ignition lock

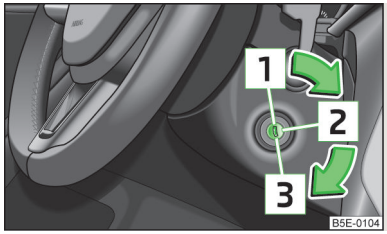

Fig. 116
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

Petrol engines » Fig. 116

1 Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Diesel engines » Fig. 116

1 Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked
2 Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot or can only be turned with difficulty into the position 2 » Fig. 116, move the steering wheel back and forth and the steering lock will unlock.

Starting the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine just after the indicator light goes out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Place the gearshift lever into neutral or place the selector lever in the position **P** or **N** and firmly put on the handbrake.
› Switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 116 on page 115.
› Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 as far as it will go and release immediately – do not touch the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

› Release the handbrake.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Press the clutch to start.
PRESS CLUTCH

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is displayed on the display.

Apply the brake to start.
APPLY BRAKE

Stopping the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key into position 1 » Fig. 116 on page 115.

For vehicle with an automatic gearbox, the ignition key can only be pulled out if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Start and stop the engine - KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking and locking the steering – KESSY 117
Switching on the ignition 118
Starting the engine 118
Switching off the ignition 118
Switching off the engine 118
Emergency start-up of the engine 119
Emergency ignition shutoff system 119

The KESSY system makes it possible to switch the ignition on/off and to start/stop the engine without actively using the key.

A key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, switch on the steering and start the vehicle.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could, for example, start the engine – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases of the engine contain besides the odourless and colourless carbon monoxide a poisonous gas – risk of life! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- If the engine does not start after the second attempt, the fuse for the electric fuel pump (in petrol engines) or for the control unit for the glow plug system or the relay for the glow plug system and fuel pump (in diesel engines) could be faulty. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 243, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 235.
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Note

- After pressing the starter button while the steering is locked, the steering is unlocked, the electrical components are activated (e.g. Infotainment, etc.) and the ignition is switched on.
- If you do not leave the vehicle after locking the steering and wish to unlock the steering again, press the starter button. At the same time, electrical components are activated (e.g. Infotainment etc.) and the ignition is switched on.
- The KESSY system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 119.
- The steering is not unlocked or locked if the starter button is repeatedly pressed at short intervals.

Unlocking and locking the steering – KESSY

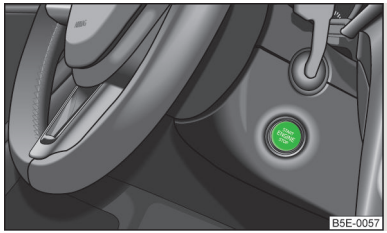

Fig. 117
Starter button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

Unlocking

› Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
› Close the driver's door.

The steering is unlocked within 2 seconds.

Locking

› Stop the vehicle.
› Switch off the engine or the ignition by pressing the starter button » Fig. 117.
› Open the driver door.

The steering is locked. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle is locked.

If the steering is locked and the KESSY system does not manage to unlock the steering lock the first time (e.g. if the wheels are resting against the curb), the attempt will be repeated twice by the system.

If the steering lock is then not unlocked, the following information is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Move the steering wheel!
MOVE STEERING WHEEL

Slightly move the steering and the system will complete 3 more attempts to unlock after 2 seconds. At the same time, the indicator light flashes.

Eliminate the possible cause which is preventing the unlocking and then repeat the attempt to unlock the steering.

Switching on the ignition

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

The steering must be unlocked to switch on the ignition.

› Briefly press the starter button » Fig. 117 on page 117 and the ignition is switched on.

If the ignition is switched on and the driver's door is opened, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Ignition on!
IGNITION STILL ON

Starting the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine just after the indicator light goes out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Place the gearshift lever into neutral or place the selector lever in the position **P** or **N** and firmly put on the handbrake.
› Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
› Press the starter button » Fig. 117 on page 117 briefly – the engine starts.
› Release the handbrake.

Vehicles with manual transmission
The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Press the clutch to start.
PRESS CLUTCH

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is displayed on the display.

Apply the brake to start.
APPLY BRAKE

Switching off the ignition

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

› Briefly press the starter button » Fig. 117 on page 117 and the ignition is switched off.

The ignition can be switched off up to a speed of 2 km/h.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed after switching off the ignition, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with an **automatic gearbox**, the selector lever must be in the position **P** or **N** and the brake pedal must not be depressed, otherwise the system would try to start.

Switching off the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

› Stop the vehicle.
› Switch off the engine by pressing the starter button » Fig. 117 on page 117, doing so switches off the ignition at the same time.

Emergency start-up of the engine

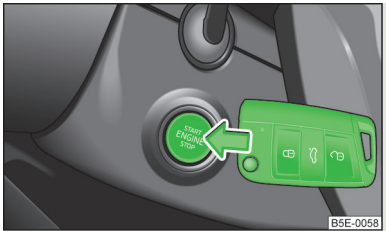

Fig. 118
Emergency start-up of engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

If the authorisation check for the key fails, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Key not found.

NO KEY

The emergency start-up must be completed.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 118 and then hold the key to the starter button.

Or

› Press the starter button directly with the key.

Note

During an emergency start-up of the engine, the key bit must face the starter button » Fig. 118.

Emergency ignition shutoff system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

In an emergency, it is possible to switch off the ignition even at speeds greater than 2 km/h, by using the "emergency ignition shutoff system".

› Press the starter button » Fig. 117 on page 117 for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

Braking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information for braking 119
Handbrake 120

WARNING

- Greater physical effort for braking is required when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. If you fail to do so, the functionality of the brake booster can be impaired – risk of accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 126.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information for braking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before driving a long distance at a steep incline, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage between service appointments as well.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 15, *Braking system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake

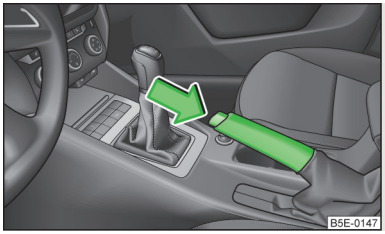

Fig. 119
Centre console: Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Loosening
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and **at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 119.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Release the parking brake!
PARKING BRAKE ON PLEASE RELEASE

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

! WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Manual shifting of gears and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 121
Pedals 121

Manual gear changing

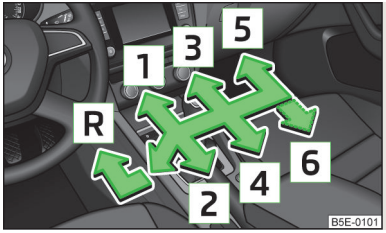

Fig. 120
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or 6 gear manual gearbox

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 121.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Observe the recommended gear » page 26.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 121.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied foot mats or formats from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever 122
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) 123
Starting-off and driving 124
Malfunction 125

WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the forward driving mode – risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of an accident!
- When the vehicle is stationery and the engine is running, you need to hold the vehicle with the brake pedal in mode **D**, **S** or **R**. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.

CAUTION

- If you moved the selector lever to mode **N** while driving, you need to release the accelerator pedal and wait until the engine has reached its idling speed, before you can move the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- At temperatures below -10 °C the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P**.
- When trying to stop on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Modes and use of selector lever

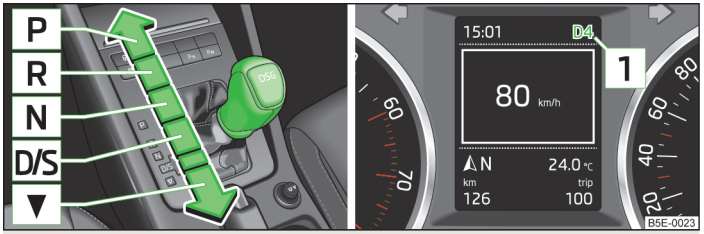

Fig. 121 **Selector lever/Instrument cluster display**

Fig. 122
Shiftlock button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster 1 » Fig. 121.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 121.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R – Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

Before selecting the mode **R** from mode **P** or **N**, depress the brake pedal and at the same time press the Shiftlock » Fig. 122.

N – Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D/S - mode for driving forward (Normal program) / mode for driving forward (Sport program)
Switch between the modes by moving the selector lever to the sprung position ▽» Fig. 121, if necessary, by selecting the driving mode » page 156.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode » page 156.

If you select the driving mode Sport or Normal, and move the selector lever to the position **D/S**, the transmission is set automatically to mode **S** or **D**.

In mode **S , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

E – Economical driving mode
If you select the driving mode Eco » page 156, and move the selector lever to the position **D/S**, the transmission is set automatically to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

In mode **E , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at lower engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion. The indicator light » page 20 illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The selector lever is released by depressing the brake pedal while the pressing lock button at the same time » Fig. 122.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will click into place if the lever is in the position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

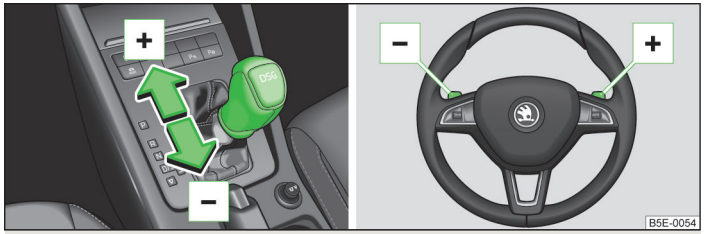

Fig. 123 **Selector lever and multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display of the instrument cluster 1 » Fig. 121 on page 122.

The gear recommendation must be observed when changing gear » page 26.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the selector lever to the right out of position **D/S**.

Shifting up gears
› Press the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 123.
› Pull the right rocker switch ⊕ » Fig. 123 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears
› Press the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 123.
› Pull the left rocker switch ⊖ » Fig. 123 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switching to manual shifting in position D/S
› Pull one the rocker switches ⊖/⊕ briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 123.

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches ⊖/⊕ for more than 1 Minute, manual shifting of gears is deactivated. You can also deactivate the temporary switch to manual shifting by pulling the right rocker switch ⊕ towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » page 119.

Starting-off and driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

Starting off
› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press and hold the lock button » Fig. 122 on page 122.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 122 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Parking
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Press and hold the lock button » Fig. 122 on page 122.
› Move the selector lever into the position **P** and then release the lock button.

Driving in neutral position in mode E (freewheel)
› Move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.
› Select the Eco driving mode » page 156, *Driving mode*.
› Take the foot off the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you briefly depress the brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch - towards the steering wheel » page 123, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

Launch control[1)]
The launch control function allows the vehicle in mode **S** or Tiptronic to reach its maximum acceleration when starting off.

› Disable the TCS » page 132, *Brake assist systems*.
› START STOP deactivate » page 155, *Manually activating/deactivating the system*.
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

Reactivate the TCS and START-STOP when the desired speed has been reached.

Kickdown
The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

WARNING

▪ Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

[1)] This function is only valid for some engines.

Malfunction

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

Emergency programme
The transmission switches to the emergency programme, if there is a fault in system of the automatic gearbox.

The emergency program can make itself apparent by the following, for example.
› Only certain gears are selected.
› The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
› Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

Gearbox overheating
The transmission may, for example, become too hot due to frequent and successive starting or stop-and-go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning light » page 14, *Automatic gearbox*.

Defective selector lever lock
If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, blown fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner, and the vehicle can no longer be moved. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » page 241.

Note

If the transmission has switched to emergency mode, visit a specialist garage.

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine 125
New tyres 126
New brake pads 126

New engine

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

The engine has to be run in during the first 1500 kilometres.

Up to 1000 kilometres
› Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed permissible for the engaged gear.
› No full throttle.
› Avoid high engine speeds.
› Do not tow a trailer.

From 1000 up to 1500 kilometres
Gradually increase the speed until you reach the full speed of the engaged gear.

The red scale of the rev counter indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds, even after the running-in period is complete.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. **Very** high engine speeds when accelerating (accelerator) are automatically restricted » !.

With vehicles with a manual gearbox, do not drive at unnecessarily **low** engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » page 26.

CAUTION

- The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in the sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm and thus cause engine damage.
- Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save on fuel, reduces engine noises and protects the environment.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

New brake pads initially do not provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Economical driving and environmental sustainability

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Looking ahead 126
Shifting gears and saving energy 127
Avoiding full throttle 127
Reducing idling 127
Avoiding short distances 128
Convenience consumers 128
Checking tyre inflation pressure 128
Avoiding unnecessary ballast 128
Regular maintenance 129
Environmental compatibility 129

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:
- your personal style of driving.
- the conditions under which your vehicle is use,
- technical requirements.

The fuel economy by can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also be influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

Looking ahead

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Shifting gears and saving energy

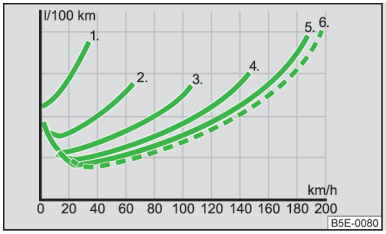

Fig. 124
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox
› Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
› Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2 000 revs/min.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » page 26.

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » Fig. 124.

Automatic gearbox
› **Slowly** apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it to the kickdown position.
› If the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly, an economic driving programme is automatically selected.

Avoiding full throttle

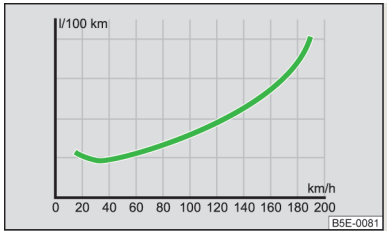

Fig. 125
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

The slower you drive, the more the fuel savings.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The » Fig. 125 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30-40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started. whereby high engine speeds should be avoided.

Avoiding short distances

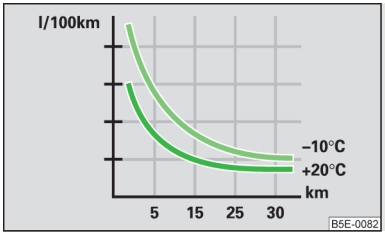

Fig. 126
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The image » Fig. 126 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and a temperature of -10 °C.

The vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer.

Convenience consumers

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

The convenience consumers have a share in fuel consumption.

We recommend you keep these consumers on only for as long as necessary.

The convenience consumers include:
- The air conditioning system;
- Rear window heater;
- Windscreen heater;
- Heating of the external mirror;
- Rear fog light;
- Fog lights;
- Heated front seats;
- Auxiliary heating (parking heating).

Information about convenience consumers and the amount of fuel consumed » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Up to three convenience consumers are displayed in the Infotainment display- the top 3 in terms of energy consumption.

Checking tyre inflation pressure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyres must overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoiding unnecessary ballast

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each **kilogramme of weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore, we recommend to carry no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Regular maintenance

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention.

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal!

Check the **oil** at regular intervals, e.g. when filling up. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.

Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

Environmental compatibility

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, selection of materials, and manufacture of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures
- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO_2.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials
- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.
- No asbestos.
- Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture
- Solvent-free cavity protection.
- Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- No CFCs used in the production process.
- Without use of mercury.
- Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always [1] be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information 130
Driving through water on streets 130

General information

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.

› When driving on poorly maintained roads and lanes.
› When driving over kerb stones.
› When driving on steep ramps, etc.

Particular attention is necessary for vehicle with a sport suspension and when then vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water on streets

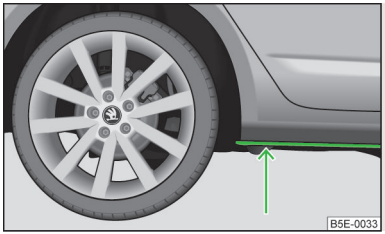

Fig. 127
Driving through water

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Determine the depth of the water when driving through bodies of water.

The water level must fit around the strut on the side member as a maximum » Fig. 127.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.
› Deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 153.

WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can reduce the braking power and extend the braking distance – risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

CAUTION

- When driving through bodies of water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unleaded petrol 131
Headlights 131

In certain countries it is also possible that the ŠKODA Partner network is limited or has not been established yet. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 131.

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » page 205. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 131.

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

You can adjust the Xenon headlights yourself by setting the "tourist light" mode in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 132
Antilock Braking System (ABS) 133
Traction Control System (TCS) 133
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS) 134
Driver Steer Recommendation (DSR) 134
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 134
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 134
Multicollision brake 135

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety offered by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS as you will not know how great the damage is and the limitation it is placing on the braking efficiency.

CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » page 200.

Note

If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL also do not work. An ABS fault is indicated with the warning light » page 17.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

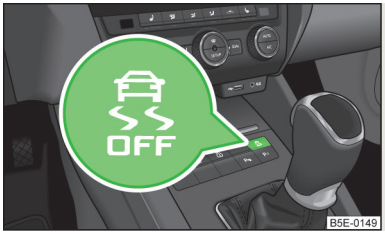

Fig. 128
ESC button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

The ESC system helps to maintain control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. The risk of skidding is reduced and your car thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface.

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.
› Antilock Brake System (ABS) » page 133.
› Traction control (TCS) » page 133.
› Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS) » page 134.
› Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) » page 134.
› Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) » page 134.
› Hill Hold Control (HHC) » page 134.
› Multicollision brake » page 135.
› Trailer stabilisation (TSA) » page 168, *Driving with a trailer*.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. Only some systems with built-in ESC can be deactivated or activated.

Activate/deactivate TCS
Within the ESC system, the TCS can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)* or with the symbol key » Fig. 128.

› Briefly press the symbol button.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is shown on the display.

Traction control (ASR) deactivated.
ASR OFF

› Press the symbol button again.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is shown on the display.

Traction control (TCS) activated.
TCS ON

Enable/disable ESC Sport
Within the ESC system, the ESC SPORT can be deactivated or activated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)* or with the symbol key » Fig. 128.

ESC Sport is a setting intended for a sporty way of driving. By activating ESC Sport, the **TCS is disabled** and the activation of the ESC procedure is delayed so that the sporty drive will not be compromised if applicable.

› Press and hold the symbol button.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is shown on the display.

ESC Sport: Limited driving stability.
ESC SPORT

› Press the symbol button again.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is shown on the display.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) activated
ESC ON

CAUTION

By activating ESC Sport, **TCS** is automatically deactivated. As a result of this, some of the other vehicle system functions may be limited.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)

Fig. 129
TCS button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

If the wheels are slipping, the TCS system adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The TCS function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 132.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

The TCS can be deactivated in the Infotainment or with the symbol button ASR OFF » Fig. 129 » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the TCR is deactivated.

Ensure the TCS is activated again afterwards.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

EDL
If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

The EDL switches itself off automatically, in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

XDS
XDL is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDL does not respond to traction, but to the relief of the inner front wheel during fast cornering. The active brake intervention on the brake of the inner wheel prevents it from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle can continue to follow the desired track.

Driver Steer Recommendation (DSR)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

The DSR indicates to the driver in critical situations a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

The HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

HHC allows you, when driving on slopes, to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active as of a 5 % slope, if the driver door is closed. HHC is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Multicollision brake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

The multifunction brake deploys automatic braking after a collision in order to reduce the risk of further collisions. Automatic braking can only be deployed at speeds of over 10 km/h in the event of a **frontal** or **side**impact.

The vehicle is slowed down automatically by the ESC system as long as the brakes, the ESC and the relevant electrical system remain operational after the impact.

Automatic braking is not applied if the driver presses the accelerator during the accident.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 136
Automatic system activation when moving forward 137
Road display 137

WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- You should satisfy yourself before reversing that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under adverse conditions, this can cause objects or people to not be recognized by the system.

CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the PMA symbol flashing in the » Fig. 130 on page 136 button. **!** or ⚠ appears in the Infotainment display. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the system to operate properly.

Note

- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- If not all fields around the vehicle are shown after the system is activated, the vehicle will need to be moved a few metres forwards or in reverse.
- If the system is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in the position **P** (the vehicle cannot move), the warning signal is interrupted and no obstacles are displayed.
- Additional mounted modules, such as a bicycle carrier, can impair the function of the parking aid.

Function

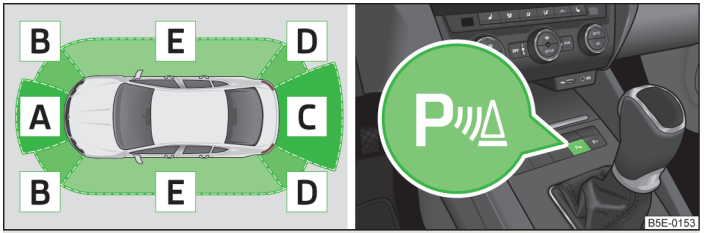

Fig. 130 **Parking aid: Range of sensors/parking aid button on vehicles with front and rear sensors**

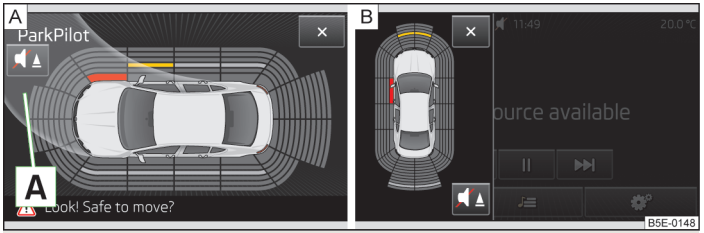

Fig. 131 **road display/compact display**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 135.

The parking aid (hereafter only referred to as system) works only when the ignition is switched on.

The system supports the driver using acoustic signals/Infotainment display when parking and manoeuvring.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasound sensors are integrated in the front/rear bumper.

Explanation of graphic - range of sensors in the vicinity of the vehicle

Area » Fig. 130	Range of sensors [a]
A	120 cm
B	90 cm
C	160 cm
D	90 cm
E [b]	90 cm

[a] These are only the approximate ranges of sensors.
[b] Applies only for vehicles with 12 sensors.

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device. The danger area thus begins at a distance of around 35 cm on vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device.

For information on setting the acoustic signals and a description of the Infotainment display see » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Activation/deactivation

The system is automatically activated when you shift into **reverse** or after pressing the symbol button P » Fig. 130. The symbol P lights up in the button; activation is confirmed by a brief acoustic signal.

The system is deactivated by moving out of reverse gear, either by pressing the symbol buttonP or automatically at a speed exceeding 10 km/h (the symbol P in the button goes out).

On vehicles which **only have rear** sensors, the system can only be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

Towing a trailer

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only the areas A and B » Fig. 130 of the system are active when operating a trailer, there is no road display.

Automatic system activation when moving forward

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 135.

Automatic activation takes place at a speed below around 10 km/h under the following conditions.
› The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 90 cm.
› The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 30 cm.
› The distance to the obstacle to the side of the vehicle is less than around 30 cm.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 131 on page 136 - B.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

Automatic display can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Road display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 135.

The display of the upcoming road changes depending on the steering angle A » Fig. 131 on page 136 - A.

Obstacles that are **located** on the road are represented by the following colours.
› Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
› Yellow – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

Obstacles that are **not located** on the road are represented by the following colours.
› Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
› White – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

The road **ahead** is displayed when a forward gear or Neutral is engaged or the selector lever is in position **N**.

The road **behind the vehicle** is displayed when reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is in position **R**.

Park assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Finding a parking space 138
Parking 139
Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space 140
Automatic brake assist 140
Information messages 140

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 135, *Parking aid* **must also be read and observed.**

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system only operates if the ignition is switched on.

During the parking procedure the system only takes over the steering movements, the pedals continue to be operated by the driver.

When the system is activated, the warning light P » Fig. 132 on page 138 - A lights up in the button.

The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.

Basis of the system function
› The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
› The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.
› The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
› the automatic turning of the front wheels when parking in, or manoeuvring out of the parking space.

WARNING

- The system does not exempt the driver from his/her responsibility for parking in and manoeuvring out of the parking space.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on parking in and manoeuvring out of the parking space. Under adverse conditions, this can cause objects or people to not be recognized by the system.
- When parking in, and manoeuvring out of parking spaces, the system automatically executes quick steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- When parking or leaving a parking space on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road because of the surface conditions. Therefore we suggest that you do not use the system in such situations.

CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences or powder snow cannot be recognised by the system.
- The evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle. The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.
- Under certain circumstances, the system may not function correctly, for example, if the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.

Finding a parking space

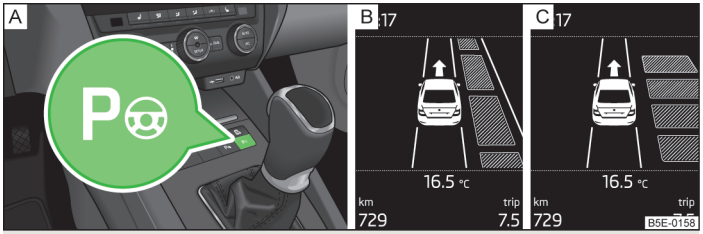

Fig. 132 **System button/displays in the instrument cluster display**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

The search for a suitable parking space takes place while the display is switched off. If the display is not switched on using the symbol button P until the driver drives past the parking space, the system can assess and display this parking space.

Finding a parallel parking space

› Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
› Press the symbol button P » Fig. 132 **once**.

The following is shown in the information display of the information cluster » Fig. 132 - B.

Finding a perpendicular parking space

› Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
› Press the symbol button **twice** P » Fig. 132.

The following is shown in the information display of the information cluster » Fig. 132 - C.

The search area for the parking space on the front passenger's side is automatically shown in the instrument cluster display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is shown in the instrument cluster display.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

If the driver changes the parking mode while searching for a parking space, the symbol button P must be pressed again.

Parking

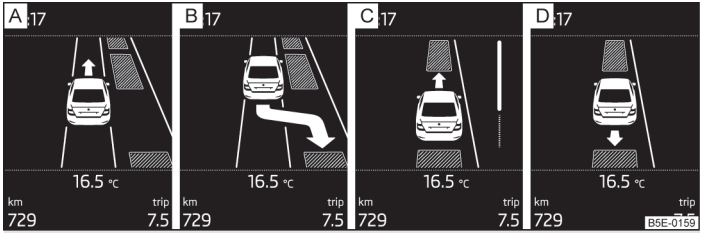

Fig. 133 **Displays in the instrument cluster display**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

The time limit for the parking procedure with the help of the system is 6 minutes.

If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 133 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until the display » Fig. 133 - B appears in the display.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever into the position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the information cluster display: **Steering int. active. Check around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel and the steering is taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

In the event that the parking procedure cannot be carried out in one go, the parking process is completed in further stages.

› If the arrow in the display is flashing to the front » Fig. 133 C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever into the position **D**.
› Wait until the steering wheel automatically turns into the required position and then carefully drive forwards.
› When the arrow in the display is flashing towards the rear » Fig. 133 - D, engage the reverse gear or move the selector lever to the position **R**.
› Wait until the steering wheel automatically turns into the required position and then carefully reverse.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Steering interv. finished. Take over steering!

Explanation of graphic

A Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
B Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
C Indication for selecting the forward gear.
D Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

Automatic termination

The system terminates the parking procedure if one of the following cases arises.
› Speed of more than 7 km/h repeatedly exceeded during the parking procedure.
› Time limit of 6 minutes exceeded for the parking procedure.
› System button pressed.
› TCS system switched off.
› Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stops the steering wheel).
› Reverse gear disengaged or selector lever removed from the position **R** when reversing into the parking space.
› Selector lever moved to position **P**.
› There is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› Automatic braking for damage limitation.

If any of the above events occurs, the following warning message is displayed. » page 140.

Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

Manoeuvring out

› Press the symbol button P » Fig. 132 on page 138 **once**.
› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Engage reverse gear.
› As soon as the following is shown in the information cluster display: **Steering int. active. Check around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel and the steering is taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
› Follow the instructions of the system shown in the instrument cluster display.

As soon as the manoeuvring procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Steering interv. finished. Take over steering!

Automatic termination

The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.

› Speed of more than 7 km/h exceeded during the manoeuvring procedure.
› System button pressed.
› TCS system switched off.
› Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stops the steering wheel).
› There is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› Automatic braking for damage limitation.

If any of the above events occurs, the following warning message is displayed. » page 140.

Automatic brake assist

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

The system provides assistance to the driver with automatic brake assist. The automatic brake assist does not exempt the driver from his/her responsibility for the accelerator, brake and clutch.

Automatic braking for preventing cancellations caused by excessive speeds
To prevent the speed from exceeding 7 km/h and to subsequently prevent cancellation of the parking procedure, automatic brake support is initiated. The parking procedure can be resumed after automatic braking.

Automatic braking takes place only once per parking procedure.

Automatic braking for damage limitation
The system detects an imminent collision based on the driving speed and the distance from the obstacle, automatic brake support is initiated.

The system function is ended after this automatic brake assist for damage limitation.

! WARNING

- Automatic brake assist only works as an element of the assist function. The driver must always be ready to brake the vehicle him/herself.
- Automatic brake assist is ended after around 1.5 seconds. Depress the braking pedal so that the vehicle does not start moving by itself.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

Park Assist stopped. Speed too high.

Reduce speed to under 40 km/h (parallel parking) /20 km/h (perpendicular parking). This message is only displayed at speeds up to around 50 km/h. When the speed exceeds 50 km/h, activate the system again with the symbol button P.

Speed too high. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the speed was exceeded. Park with a max. speed of 7 km/h.

Park Assist stopped. Driver steer. intervent.

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist stopped. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated. Activate the TCS.

ASR deactivated. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist stopped.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist stopped. currently not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!

Assume control of the steering. Complete the parking procedure without using the system.

ASR intervention. Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

Park Assist: indicate and engage reverse!

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

Please take over steering and drive on.

The manoeuvring procedure out of a parallel parking space has ended. Assume control of the steering.

Aut. parking space exit not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

Braking intervention. Speed too high.

The driving speed during the parking procedure was too high - automatic brake assist is initiated.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating 142
Storing and maintaining speed 142
Changing the stored speed 142
Switching off temporarily 142
Information on the display 143

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is switched on.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) – risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent unintentional switching on of the system.

CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with very steep gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. In such cases, a lower gear should be engaged or the footbrake applied.
- It is not possible to switch on the cruise control system if the first gear or reverse gear is engaged (Vehicles fitted with a manual transmission)

▪ It is not possible to switch on the cruise control system if the selector lever is in the position **P**, **N** or **R** (Vehicles fitted with an automatic transmission)
▪ The Cruise Control System may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the speed exceeds maximum permissible engine speed, or a similar event takes place.
▪ The Cruise Control System also remains activated after shifting the gear!

Activating/deactivating

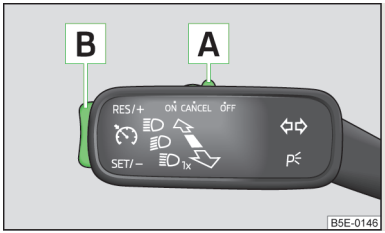

Fig. 134
Operating lever: Rocker switch and switch of the cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 141.

Activating
› Turn the switch A » Fig. 134 into the **ON** position.

Deactivating
› Turn the switch A » Fig. 134 into the **OFF** position.

Storing and maintaining speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 141.

› Activate the cruise control system » page 142.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Press the rocker button B in position **SET** » Fig. 134 on page 142.

After you have released the rocker button B out of the position **SET**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing the stored speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 141.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button B
› Press the rocker button B in position **RES** » Fig. 134 on page 142.

The speed will increase continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **RES** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed with the rocker button B
The stored speed can be **reduced** by pressing the rocker button B » Fig. 134 on page 142 into the position **SET**.

The speed will decrease continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

If the rocker button is released at a speed of less than 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. The speed must then be stored again by pressing the rocker button B in the position **SET** after increasing the speed of the vehicle to more than 25 km/h.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator
› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Decreasing the speed with the brake pedal
The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system » page 142.

Switching off temporarily

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 141.

The cruise control system is **temporarily switched off** by pressing the switch A » Fig. 134 on page 142 into the spring-tensioned position **CANCEL** or by depressing the brake pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly press the rocker button B in position **RES** to **resume** the stored speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

Information on the display

Fig. 135 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 141.

Explanation of graphic

A The GRA is temporarily switched off.
B System fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.
C The speed memory is blank.
D The GRA is switched on.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Instructions and Information 143
Radar sensor 144
Operation 145
Automatic stop-start 146
Operation Overview 146
Start control 146
Stop/resume control 147
Set/change the desired speed 147
Set time interval level 148
Special driving conditions 148
Information messages 149

Adaptive cruise control (From here on referred to only as ACC) can maintain the set speed or the proximity to the vehicle ahead consistently, without the need to operate the gas or brake pedals.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

WARNING

- The ACC only works as an aid - it does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to maintain full control over the vehicle's steering.
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The driver must always be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (accelerate or brake).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Instructions and Information

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

WARNING

- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's footbrake.
- Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.
- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- When riding on a steep gradient / high slope.

CAUTION

- It is not possible to switch on the control on vehicles fitted with a **manual transmission** if the first gear or reverse gear is engaged.
- It is not possible to switch on the control on vehicles fitted with an **automatic transmission**, if the selector lever is in the position **P**, **N** or **R**.
- The control may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the maximum permissible engine speed is exceeded, etc.

Note

- The speed can only be set and stored when ACC is activated. The stored speed may differ from the actual speed if a proximity control procedure is in progress at the time.
- Vehicles with an automatic transmission can decelerate to a standstill and start again using the ACC.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.

Radar sensor

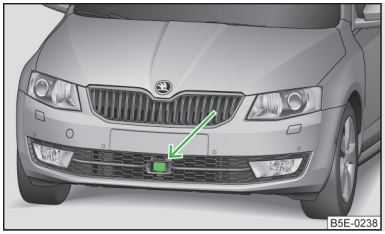

Fig. 136
Mounting location of the radar sensor

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

The radar sensor » Fig. 136 (From here on referred to as sensor) is used to assess the traffic situation in front of the vehicle.

The sensor can distinguish objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.
- The sensor is covered by mud, snow or debris, for example.
- The sensor or its immediate surroundings are covered by other objects, for example, a sticker is attached.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or does not have "visibility" for any other reason, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

ACC: No sensor visibility.

Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or eliminate the obstacle causing the lack of"visibility". Should the ACC still be unavailable after the engine is restarted, push the lever into position **OFF** » Fig. 139 on page 146. Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to an impairment of the ACC function - risk of accidents! If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Any improperly carried out work to the front of the vehicle may cause the sensor to become misaligned. We therefore recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage. Please also observed the instructions in » page 200, *Modifications, repairs and technical alterations*.
- The area in front of and around the sensor must not be covered with stickers, additional lights or similar items. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

CAUTION

The sensor may not be able to distinguish all objects correctly under certain circumstances. We therefore recommend that you avoid using the ACC in the following cases.

- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

CAUTION

- Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

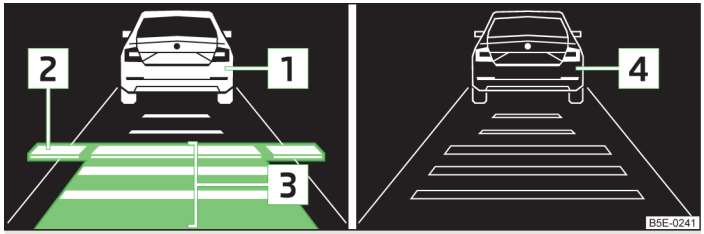

Fig. 137 **Instrument cluster display (ACC): Set proximity, recognized vehicle**

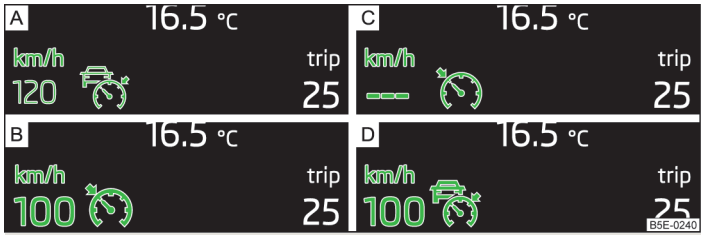

Fig. 138 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays.**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

The ACC can be controlled and the settings adjusted using the control level» Fig. 139 on page 146 or in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR key)*.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 137

1 Vehicle detected (control active).
2 Line, which indicates the time interval delay when adjusting.
3 Set time interval to the vehicle ahead.
4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated).

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 138

A Control deactivated (vehicle detected).
B Control activated (no vehicle detected).
C Control deactivated (no speed stored).
D Control activated (vehicle detected).

The ACC can consistently maintain the set speed of 30-160 km/h, as well as the proximity to the vehicle ahead ranging from a very small to a very large time interval.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough with respect to the vehicle ahead, the symbol and the following message both appear in the instrument cluster display.

Apply the brake!

Take over the steering and apply the brake!

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx.120m ahead using the radar sensor .

Automatic stop-start

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill
If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

Starting to drive again after a holding period
As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Take over the steering and apply the brake.

Operation Overview

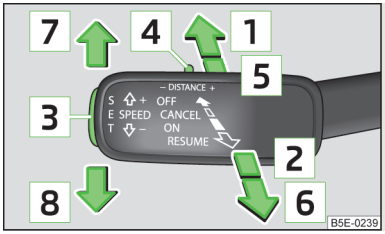

Fig. 139
Operating lever

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever

1	OFF	Deactivate ACC
2	ON	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
3	SET	Start control (adopt current speed) / Reduce speed by 1 km/h at a time
4	– DISTANCE +	Set proximity level
5	CANCEL	Stop control (sprung position)
6	RESUME	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
7	SPEED +	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
8	SPEED –	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time

Note

If the lever » Fig. 139 is pushed straight OFF straight into the sprung position, RESUME the current speed will be stored and control starts.

Start control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

Control can be started with the button SET or by pushing the lever into the sprung position RESUME » Fig. 139 on page 146.

Button SET

› Press the button **SET**.

The ACC will take over the current speed and executes control.

Lever position RESUME

› Push the lever into the sprung position **RESUME**.

The ACC will take over the current speed and executes control. Should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ ACC is enabled.
✓ TCS is enabled » page 132, *Brake assist systems*.
✓ On vehicles with a manual transmission, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
✓ On vehicles with a manual transmission, the current speed must be higher than approx. 25 km/h.
✓ On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the selector lever must be in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the current speed must be higher than approx. 2 km/h.

If control is enabled, the green indicator light illuminates in the warning light bar.

Note

▪ If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.
▪ When TCS is disabled, it will be activated automatically upon starting control.
▪ If the TCS is deactivated during control, control is stopped automatically.

Stop/resume control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

Stop control

› Push the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 139 on page 146.

or

› Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 146.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch is held down for longer than 30 s.

Set/change the desired speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever» page 146.

The set speed is stored upon releasing the lever or the button on the button on the lever.

Set/change speed by 10 km/h at a time(SPEED) - Requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

Increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (RESUME) - Requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.
✓ Vehicle control ensues.

Decrease speed by 1 km/h at a time (SET) - Requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.
✓ Vehicle control ensues.

Change speed by adopting the current speed(SET) - Requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.
✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 146.
- If the vehicle is regulated with a lower speed than that which is stored, then upon pressing the button **SET** the current speed is stored. By pressing the button **SET** again, the speed decreases by 1 km/h at a time.

Set time interval level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever » Fig. 139 on page 146 or in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Setting by means of the lever

› Flick the switch **DISTANCE** into the sprung position + or set - » Fig. 139 on page 146.

The display of the instrument cluster shows line 2 » Fig. 137 on page 145, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust line 2 to the desired proximity level.

Note

- If the proximity is changed in the infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The proximity is dependent on the speed. The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- On wet roads, a longer time interval to the vehicle ahead should always be selected than on dry roads.

Special driving conditions

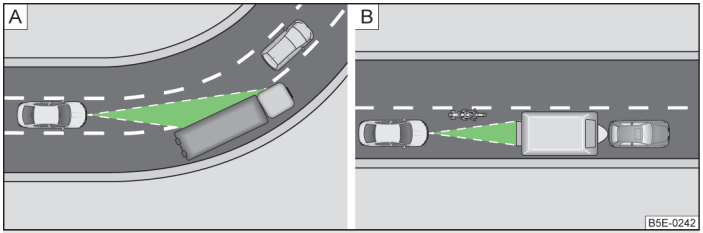

Fig. 140 **Special conditions: Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

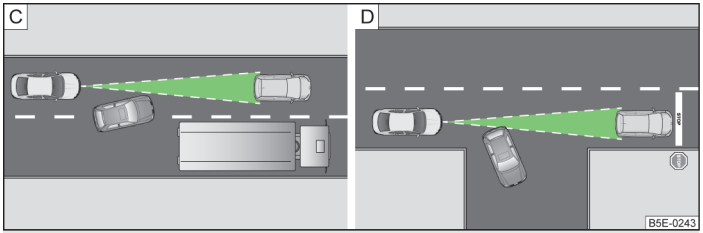

Fig. 141 **Special conditions: Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

The following and similar situations require special attention of the driver.

When cornering

When driving around long bends the ACC may respond to a vehicle in the adjacent lane » Fig. 140 - A. Your own vehicle is regulated with respect to this vehicle and will no longer respond to the vehicle ahead.

In such cases, control should be disabled by accelerating, applying the brake or pressing the button **CANCEL** on the operating lever » Fig. 139 on page 146.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side
Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by the radar sensor until they are within the sensor's range» Fig. 140 - B. This is especially true for narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Other vehicles changing lanes
Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small proximity » Fig. 141 - C do not have to be detected by the radar sensor in time. The result may be a delayed ACC response.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Stationary vehicles
The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 141 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

In such cases, take over the steering and apply the brake.

When overtaking
When your vehicle is being controlled (the speed is lower than that which is stored) and the indicator is activated, the ACC interprets that the driver intends to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If the vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

An acceleration process can be stopped any time by applying the brake or pressing the button **CANCEL** on the operating lever » Fig. 139 on page 146.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts
Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Control should therefore be disabled whenever you are driving behind or overtaking such a vehicle.

Towing a trailer
When towing a trailer, the ACC control will be less powerful. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 143.

If the symbol appears in the instrument cluster display when ACC is enabled, it means that the ACC is not working.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

ACC: No sensor visibility.

The sensor is dirty or has no "visibility". Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility" » Fig. 136 on page 144. Should the ACC still be unavailable after the engine is restarted, push the lever into position **OFF** » Fig. 139 on page 146. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ACC is not available.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the ACC is still not available, push the lever into position **OFF**. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Error: ACC

There is an ACC system error. Push the lever into position **OFF**. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Speed limit

Increase the speed accordingly and start control» page 146.

Area monitoring system (Front Assist)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Instructions and Information 150
Radar sensor 150
Operation 151
Activating/deactivating 152
"City"Emergency braking 152
Information messages 153

The area monitoring system (From here on only referred to as Front Assist) warns you of the danger of a collision with an obstacle in front of the vehicle and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes as appropriate.

WARNING

- Front Assist only works as an aid, it does absolve the driver of the responsibility to maintain full control over the vehicle's steering.
- Front Assist has physical and system related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- If Front Assist gives a warning, then, depending on the traffic situation, immediately slow down the car by applying the brakes or avoid the obstacle.
- The increased safety through the Front Assist system must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- The driver must always be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (brake or accelerate).
- Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

Instructions and Information

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

Front Assist may become impaired in the following situations, for example.

› When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
› Driving around "sharp" bends.
› When fully pressing down the accelerator pedal.
› If there is a fault with the Front Assist system.
› When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.

WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.

- When the vehicle is being towed away.

WARNING (Continued)

- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- When an undesired activation has repeatedly occurred.
- When on a truck, train or a car ferry service or the like.

CAUTION

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by Front Assist via the radar sensor until they are within the sensor's range. This is especially true for narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles.

Note

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, Front Assist not available.

Radar sensor

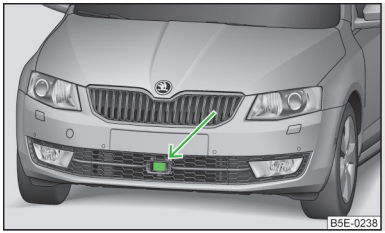

Fig. 142
Mounting location of the radar sensor

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

The radar sensor » Fig. 142 (From here on referred to as sensor) is used to assess the traffic situation in front of the vehicle.

The sensor can distinguish objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.
› The sensor is covered by mud, snow or debris, for example.
› The sensor or its immediate surroundings are covered by other objects, for example, a sticker is attached.
› When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or does not have "visibility" for any other reason, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Front Assist: No sensor view.

Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or eliminate the obstacle causing the lack of"visibility". Should Front Assist still be unavailable after the engine is restarted, consult a specialist garage for help.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate Front Assist. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to impaired function of the Front Assist function - risk of accidents! If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Any improperly carried out work to the front of the vehicle may cause the sensor to become misaligned. We therefore recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage. Please also observed the instructions in » page 200, *Modifications, repairs and technical alterations*.
- The area in front of and around the sensor must not be covered with stickers, additional lights or similar items. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

WARNING

The sensor may not be able to distinguish all objects correctly under certain circumstances. You should therefore not use Front Assist in the following cases - risk of accidents!
- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries and the like.)

CAUTION

- Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

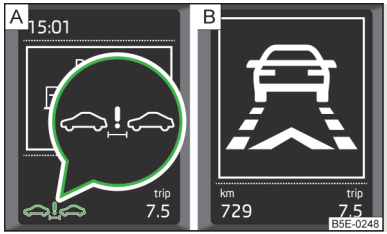

Fig. 143
Instrument cluster display: Note (dangerous proximity) / advance warning or intervention of the city emergency braking function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

Front Assist assists the driver while driving in the following ways:
› Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
› Warns you of an impending collision.
› Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
› Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
› If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic brake action is performed.

Front Assist can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ Front Assist is enabled.
✓ TCS is enabled » page 132, *Brake assist systems*.
✓ The vehicle is traveling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

proximity warning (dangerous proximity)
If a safe time interval to the vehicle ahead is exceeded, the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » Fig. 143 - A.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Advance warning
If Front Assist detects a risk of collision with a vehicle ahead, a symbol appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an acoustic signal is heard » Fig. 143 - B. At the same time, the braking system is prepared for possible emergency braking.

The advance warning may occur when driving between 30 km/h and 210 km/h.

Apply the brakes or avoid the obstacle!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning, Front Assist briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver fails to respond to the acute warning, Front Assist starts to apply the brakes automatically with increasing stopping power in several stages.

Front Assist can help to mitigate the consequences of a potential accident by means of a speed reduction.

Brake Support
If the driver does not brake sufficiently in case of an imminent collision, Front Assist can increase the braking power, thereby reducing the consequences of a potential accident.

The brake support only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

CAUTION

The automatic braking interventions by Front Assist can be terminated by pressing the clutch or the accelerator, or by moving the steering wheel.

Note

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by Front Assist, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

Activating/deactivating

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

Front Assist is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

Front Assist should only be disabled in exceptional cases.

Activate / deactivate front assist
Front Assist can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)* or in the information display » page 28, *Menu item wizard*.

By disabling the system, the proximity warning system and the advance warning are also deactivated.

Activate/deactivate proximity warning
The proximity warning indicator can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The set proximity warning remains active even after stopping and starting the ignition.

Activate/deactivate advance warning
The advance warning can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The set advance warning remains active even after stopping and starting the ignition.

"City"Emergency braking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

The "City"Emergency braking function (From here on referred to only as the emergency brake function) is a component of the Front Assist system.

The emergency brake function assists the driver when driving as follows.
› Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
› If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic brake action occurs with stopping power that increases in several stages.

The emergency brake function intervenes when driving between about 5 km/h and 30 km / h.

The emergency brake function is automatically activated or deactivated together with the Front Assist system.

If the emergency brake function triggers an automatic brake action, the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » Fig. 143 on page 151 - B.

WARNING

The emergency brake function can slow down the vehicle to a complete standstill. If the vehicle continues to roll forward after stopping, then it should be stopped with the footbrake.

CAUTION

Automatic braking interventions by the emergency brake function can be terminated by pressing the clutch or the accelerator, or by moving the steering wheel.

Note

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the emergency brake function, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

Front Assist: No sensor view.

The sensor is dirty or has no "visibility". Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility" » Fig. 136 on page 144. If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 152. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Front Assist not available.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 152. Seek help from a specialist garage.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Starting/shutting down the engine 154
Operating conditions of the system 155
Manually activating/deactivating the system 155
Information messages 156

The START-STOP system helps you to save fuel while at the same time reducing harmful exhaust emissions and CO_2 emissions.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

In the start-stop mode, the engine automatically switches to the vehicle's idle phase, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. The engine restarts automatically where necessary.

Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.
- ✓ No trailer is coupled.

WARNING

- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.

CAUTION

Always deactivate the START-STOPsystem before driving through water » page 130.

Note

▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode on vehicles with manual transmission or on vehicles with automatic transmission when the selector lever in position **P**, the engine must be started manually » page 116.
▪ After manually starting the engine on vehicles with manual transmission, automatic engine shut down is not possible until the vehicle has travelled the required minimum distance for START-STOPP mode.
▪ If on vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever **D/S** or **N** is selected after moving in reverse, the vehicle will first need to achieve a speed greater than 10 km/h before automatic engine shut down takes place again.
▪ Changes to the outdoor temperature can have an effect on the internal temperature of the vehicle battery even after several hours. If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
▪ If the Climatronic is running in automatic mode, it is possible that under certain conditions the engine may not switch off automatically.

Starting/shutting down the engine

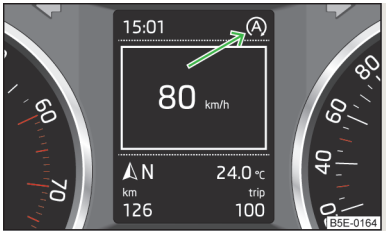

Fig. 144
Instrument cluster display: Engine shut down (STOP phase)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Vehicles with manual transmission
› Stop the vehicle (where necessary, apply the handbrake).
› Put the gear stick into Neutral.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shut down (STOP phase) takes place. The warning icon Ⓐ » Fig. 144 appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

› Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again (START phase). The warning icon goes out.

Vehicles with automatic transmission
› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shut down takes place. The warning icon Ⓐ » Fig. 144 appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again. The warning icon goes out.

Further information on automatic transmission
Engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D/S**, **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P** the engine remains shut down after you release the brake pedal. Start the engine by pressing the gas pedal or by choosing a different gear and releasing the brake pedal.

If the selector lever is moved into position **R** during the **STOP phase**, the engine will re-start.

There is no automatic engine shutdown if the system detects a vehicle movement due to a large steering angle, or when the selector lever is moved to position **R** (e.g. when parking).

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

Operating conditions of the system

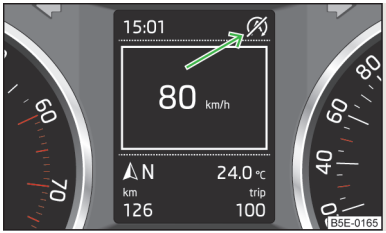

Fig. 145
Instrument cluster display: Engine shut down is not currently available

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

The START-STOP system is very complex. Some of the procedures are hard to check without servicing.

No engine shut down is carried out
Before each STOP phase, the system checks whether certain conditions have been met. No engine shut down takes place in the following situations.

- The engine has not reached the minimum temperature for START STOP mode.
- The temperature inside the vehicle has not reached the desired temperature set in the air-conditioning system/heating.
- The external temperature is very low/high.
- The windscreen heater is switched on.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The parking aid/Park Assist is switched on.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The stationary vehicle is on a steep slope or a steep downhill section.
- The idling speed is too high.

The warning icon » Fig. 145 appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

The automatic start procedure takes place again
During the STOP phase, the engine fires up without any active driver intervention, e.g. in the following situations.

- The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- The difference between the temperature setting of the air-conditioning system/heating and the temperature of the interior is too large.
- The windscreen heater is switched on.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The brake pedal was pressed several times (the pressure in the braking system is too low).
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.

Manually activating/deactivating the system

Fig. 146
Button for the START-STOP system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Activation/deactivation
- Press the symbol button » Fig. 146.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

Note

- If the system is deactivated during the STOP phase, the automatic start procedure takes place.
- Selecting the driving mode Eco when the system is deactivated will automatically activate the system » page 156.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

Start the engine manually!

START MANUALLY

The driver sees this message when the conditions for the automatic start procedure are not met during the STOP phase. The engine must be started manually » page 116.

Error: start-stop system

START STOP ERROR

Error in the START-STOP system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Driving mode

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Selecting driving mode 156
Mode Normal 157
Mode Sport 157
Mode Eco 157
Mode Individual 157

Selecting the driving mode allows you to adjust a range of different driving parameters for the vehicle.

The set driving mode remains stored even after switching the ignition on and off.

WARNING

- Setting the driving mode while driving can distract you from other traffic – risk of accident.
- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Note

The driver can change some vehicle functions irrespective of the selected driving mode. For instance, in the driving mode Eco, the driver can switch the automatic transmission to the mode **S**.

Selecting driving mode

Fig. 147
Centre console: Button for selecting the driving mode

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

The menu for selecting the driving mode allows you to set the vehicle to one of the three preset driving modes Normal, Sportand Eco, or to the driving mode Individual which allows individual settings.

The selected driving mode is called by pressing the symbol button MODE » Fig. 147 accessed, and the menu is opened in the Infotainment display. More information about setting the driving mode » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

If a driving mode other than Normal is selected, then the MODE » Fig. 147symbol lights up on the button.

Mode Normal

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

The relevant systems are set for a general type of vehicle use.

This mode is suitable for common everyday use.

Mode Sport

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving style.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)
The accelerator pedal is more responsive to depressing the pedal, and the acceleration is more dynamic than in mode Normal.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **S** » page 121.

Steering
The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering » page 114.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)
The headlights adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode Normal » page 54.

ProActive passenger protection
The first level of protection is deactivated » page 158.

Mode Eco

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)
The accelerator pedal is less responsive to depressing the pedal, and the acceleration is more relaxed than in mode Normal.

After pressing the button, the acceleration occurs more relaxed than in mode Normal » page 141, *Cruise Control System*.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 26.

When the START-STOP system was deactivated manually » page 153, it is automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 121.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)
The system is automatically deactivated » page 54.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)
The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode Normal.

Note

- The Eco driving mode is not available when towing a trailer. When the vehicle is connected electrically to a trailer and is in the Eco driving mode, the Normal driving mode is configured automatically.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kickdown function) is possible also in driving mode Eco.

Mode Individual

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

In mode Individual you can select between Normal, Sport and Eco for each system separately » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

ProActive passenger protection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 158

WARNING

Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety by ProActive passenger protection must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!

Note

- If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated » page 185 the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.
- The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » page 18, *Safety Systems*.

Function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

ProActive passenger protection (From here on referred to only as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

The system is ready to intervene automatically in the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The vehicle moves at a speed of more than 30 km/h.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

› The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
› The windows in the side doors (if open) are automatically closed up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
› The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection
The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first level of protection can be deactivated by one of the following measures.

› Deactivation of the system in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.
› Deactivation of TCS » page 133.
› Selecting the driving mode Sport » page 156.

The second level of protection
The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as in panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Lane Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 159
Activating/deactivating 160
Explanation of situations 160
Information messages 160

WARNING

- Lane Assist only operates as a support- it does absolve the driver of the responsibility to maintain full control over the vehicle's steering.
- Lane Assist only makes the driver away that the vehicle is approaching the line between two lanes by means of a steering intervention. The driver retains responsibility at all times for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- The camera need not be able to detect all lane lines. A steering intervention can only be made when the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes.
- Some objects on the road may be incorrectly detected as lines. As a result, an incorrect steering intervention may take place.
- The function of adaptive lane guidance Assist system may be restricted when driving e.g. over rutted roads, on a slope, or if there are lateral winds.
- Do not use the assist system in poor weather, e.g. black ice, fog, heavy rain – risk of accident!

WARNING

The detection capability of the camera may be limited by various external influences. In such cases, the assistant may not detect the line between two lanes at all or not properly. The detection capability of the camera may be restricted in the following situations, for example.

- When visibility conditions are poor, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- The viewing range of the camera is impeded by a vehicle traveling ahead.
- The camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the Assist system.

Note

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Operation

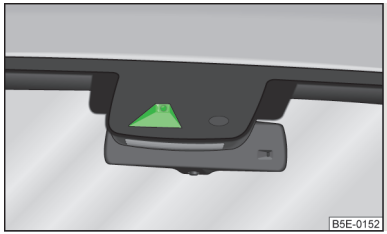

Fig. 148
Windscreen: Camera viewing window for Lane Assist

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

Lane Assist (From here on referred to only as the system), helps to keep the vehicle within the lane.

The system detects the boundary lines of a lane using the camera » Fig. 148.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be overridden at any time.

If the turn signal is switched on prior to driving over the boundary line (e.g. when making a turn), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than 65 km/h.
- ✓ The boundary lines are clearly visible (appropriate longitudinal markings).
- ✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.
- ✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
- ✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

Adaptive lane assist
Adaptive lane assist helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the system detects only one boundary line, it will help to maintain the selected proximity from said boundary line.

If the proximity to the detected boundary line is changed, the system quickly adapts and maintains the newly-selected position.

Adaptive lane assist can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Activating/deactivating

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)* or in the information display » page 28, *Menu item wizard*.

Explanation of situations

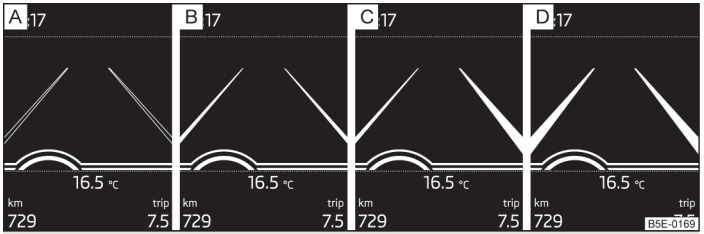

Fig. 149 **Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

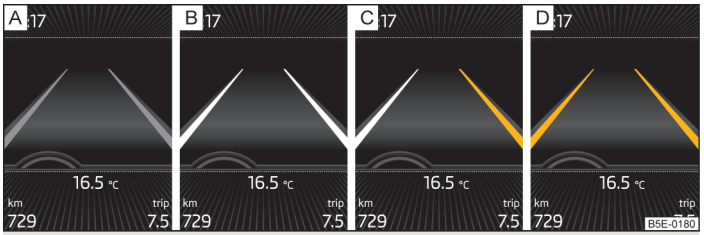

Fig. 150 **Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

Explanation of graphic

- **A** The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
- **B** The system is active and ready to intervene.
- **C** The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
- **D** Adaptive lane assist ensues (boundary lines on both sides of the vehicle detected).

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

Illuminates	Description
	The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
	The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Assist not available. No sensor view.

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Lane Assist currently not available.

The system has limited functionality due to a temporary error. Try to re-activate the machine.

Error: Lane Assist

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Lane Assist: take over steering!

The system has detected that there are no hands on the steering wheel. In this case, the Assist system is not ready to intervene. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 161
Notifications and settings 162
Information messages 162

WARNING

- Traffic sign detection only operates as a support. Real traffic signs always have priority over electronic displays. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- Traffic signs may not be recognised at all by the system, or may be recognised incorrectly. As a result, the traffic signs may not be displayed at all, or the wrong one may appear.
- Traffic sign recognition does not warn about exceeding the maximum permitted speed nor does it adjust the driving speed to the maximum speed!
- The display notification is based on the standard units of speed measurement in the country. For example, the notification in the display of the instrument cluster can therefore be shown in km/h or mph depending on the country.

Note

Traffic sign recognition is not available in all countries.

Function

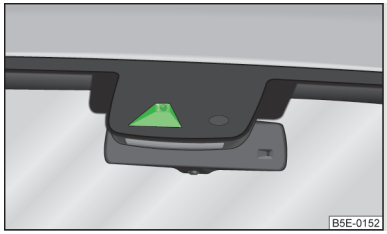

Fig. 151
Windscreen: Camera viewing range for traffic sign recognition

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 161.

Traffic sign recognition (From here on referred to only as system) allows the following traffic signs recognised by the system to be shown in the instrument cluster display.
› Speed limit
› Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system works on the basis of the data captured by the camera and is only able to show traffic signs which are in the camera's "viewing range" » Fig. 151.

Data from the camera can be supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent in the following situations.
› Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
› The camera is blinded by the sun.
› The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
› The camera "viewing range" is obstructed by an obstacle.
› Travelling at high speed.
› The traffic signs are fully or partially obscured (e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles).
› The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border).
› The traffic signs are damaged or bent.

› The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
› The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Notifications and settings

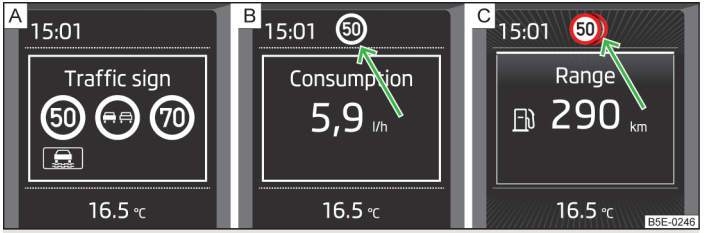

Fig. 152 **Instrument cluster display: Example of the traffic sign recognition notifications / additional notification (monochromatic display) / additional notification (colour display)**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 161.

The detected traffic signs are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » page 28, *Driving data (Multifunction display)*.

- **Driving data**
  - **Traffic sign**

Additional display
If the menu item **Traffic sign** is currently not shown » Fig. 152 - A, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » Fig. 152 - B, C.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, the next traffic sign will also in some cases be displayed in the colour display - C. All detected traffic signs can be displayed in the menu item **Traffic sign** - A.

The additional display traffic sign detection can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Traffic sign display when towing a trailer
When towing a trailer, displaying the traffic signs which apply when towing a trailer can be activated.

The traffic sign detection display when towing a trailer can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 161.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

No restriction at present.

No maximum speeds were recognised (e.g. on German motorways where there is no speed limit).

Error: traffic sign recognition

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition: clean windscreen!

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Traffic sign recognition: restricted.

Infotainment Navigation is not currently providing any data. Check whether the maps are up-to-date or the whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 163
Information messages 163

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, in adverse weather conditions, or in bad road conditions).
- The fatigue detection system is designed primarily for motorway driving.

Function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

The fatigue detection system advises the driver on the basis of information about the steering behaviour, to take a break from driving. The system recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km/h.

After the ignition has been switched on, the system evaluates the steering behaviour for 15 minutes. This baseline analysis is constantly compared with the current steering behaviour.

If the system detects deviations from normal steering behaviour due to possible fatigue of the driver, it recommends to take a break from driving.

The system deletes the stored baseline analysis if one of the following conditions is met.

› The vehicle is stopped and the ignition is turned off.
› The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt is taken off and the driver's door is opened.
› The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions is met or the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

The symbol ♨ will and the following message appear in the instrument cluster display for a few seconds.

Fatigue detected. Take a break!
DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK

An audible signal is also emitted.

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 164
Setting the ready position 165
Installing the ball rod 165
Check proper fitting 166
Removing the ball rod 166
Use and care 167

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Maximum Trailer drawbar load weight is **75 kg**, or **80 kg** for the Octavia Estate 4x4 vehicles.

WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not operate the ball rod if it is not correctly inserted in the mounting recess.
- Do not operate the towing device if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Never release the ball rod while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

Handle the ball rod carefully to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

Description

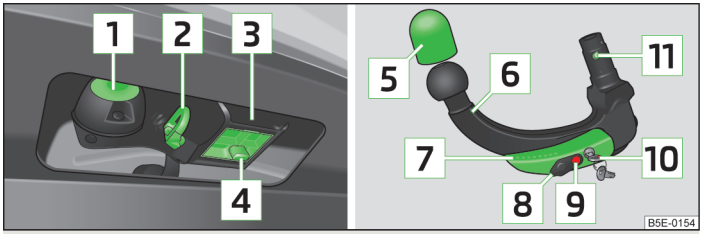

Fig. 153 **Carrier of the towing device/ball rod**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

The ball rod can be removed and can be found in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » page 228.

Explanation of graphic

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eye
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Ball rod
7 Operating lever
8 Lock cap
9 Trigger pin
10 Keys
11 Locking ball

Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Setting the ready position

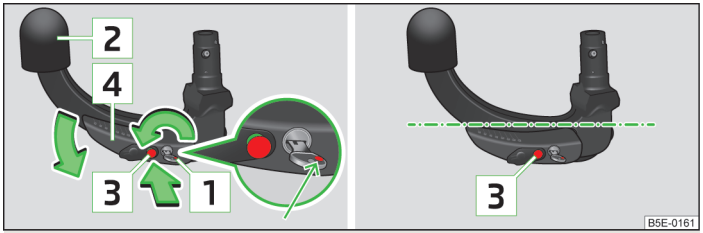

Fig. 154 **Setting the ready position/ready position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

Before installing always adjust the ball rod in the ready position.

› Turn the key 1 so that its red mark is visible » Fig. 154.
› Grab the ball rod underneath the protective cap 2.
› Press the trigger pin 3 as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever 4 downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The lever remains locked in this position.

CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned into a different position.

Installing the ball rod

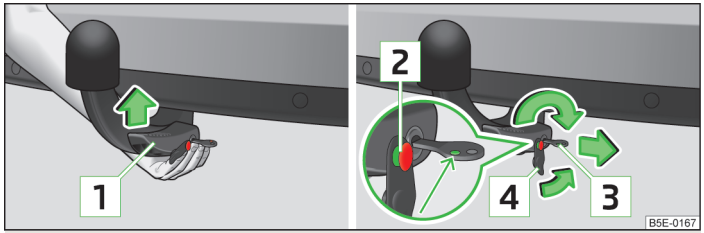

Fig. 155 **Insert the ball rod/lock up the lock, and put the lock cover on**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

› Pull of the cap 4 » Fig. 153 on page 164 downwards.
› Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 165.
› Grab the ball rod **from underneath** » Fig. 155 and insert into the mounting recess until it audibly clicks » !.

Lever 1 turns upwards **automatically** and the release pin 2 pops out (its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If the lever 1 does not turn automatically, or if the trigger pin 2 does not come out, remove the ball rod from the mounting recess by turning the lever downwards as far as it can go. Clean the wedge surfaces on the ball rod and the mounting recess.

› Lock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key 3 by 180° to the right (see green marking is visible) and remove the key in the direction of the arrow.
› Insert the cap 4 on the lock in the direction of the arrow » !.
› Check the ball rod for proper attachment » page 166.

WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

CAUTION

- After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock of the operating lever – there is a risk of dirt getting into the lock.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!
- After removing the ball rod, always place the cap on the mounting recess.

Check proper fitting

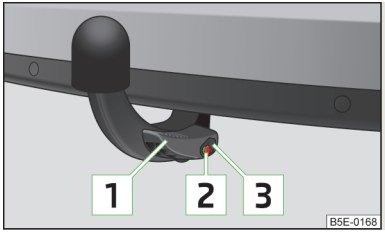

Fig. 156
Check the proper attachment of the ball rod

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

Before each use of the ball rod, check that it is attached properly.

Check the following points.

✓ The lever 1 is at the top » Fig. 156.
✓ The trigger pin 2 is completely exposed (both its red and green part is visible).
✓ The key is removed.
✓ the cap 3 is on top of the lock of the operating lever.
✓ The ball rod does not come off the mounting recess even after strong "shaking".

WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the ball rod was properly locked!

Removing the ball rod

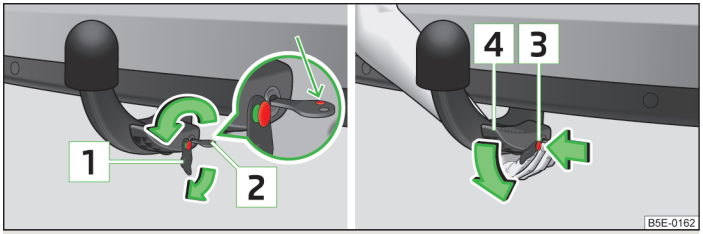

Fig. 157 **Unlock the operating lever of the ball rod/removing the ball rod**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

› Remove the cap 1 » Fig. 157 from the lock on the ball rod in the direction of the arrow.
› Unlock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key 2 180° to the left so that the red marking becomes visible.
› Grab hold of the ball rod from underneath.
› Press the trigger pin 3 as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever 4 downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball rod latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Place the cap 4 » Fig. 153 on page 164 on the mounting recess.

WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

CAUTION

- If the lever is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball rod then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed.
- Stow the ball head in the ready position with the key inserted in the box. When doing so, make the side opposite to the inserted key face downwards – there is a risk of damaging the key.
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

Note

- We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
- Remove any dirt from the ball rod before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

Seal the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Use a suitable lubricating grease where necessary.

Include the protective cap when stowing away the ball rod to protect the boot from getting contaminated.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

CAUTION

Apply lubricating grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer 167
Driving with a trailer 168
Trailer stabilisation 169
Anti-theft alarm system 169

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced. whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load
Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive at a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 221, *Service life of tyres*.

Trailer load
The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 254, *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – risk of accident and serious injury.
- Slipping loads can significantly impair the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – risk of accident and serious injury.

Driving with a trailer

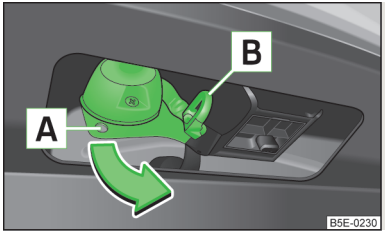

Fig. 158
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

› Before hitching the trailer to the vehicle, hold on to the 13-pin power socket in the area A » Fig. 158 and swivel it out in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the protective cap 5 » Fig. 153 on page 164 upwards before hitching the trailer to the vehicle.

Safety eye
The purpose of the safety eyelet B » Fig. 158 is to attach the breakaway cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eye, it must **sag freely** in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse, etc.).

Exterior mirrors
You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 52, *Side lights and low beam*.

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when hitching a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light in the display is lit. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 213.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 21, *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING

- Never use the safety eye to tow a vehicle!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.

WARNING (Continued)

- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they work.
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » page 245.
- Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eye can result in mechanical wear on the protective surface of the eye. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eye and is not a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, have your car inspected between service intervals too.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be put on when coupling and decoupling the trailer.

Trailer stabilisation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

The trailer stabilisation is an extension of the stabilisation control that works in conjunction with the counter-steering assistance to reduce the amount the trailer "sways".

After turning on the ignition, the ESC warning light in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the ABS warning light.

Function requirements for trailer stabilisation.

✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
✓ The ESC system is active. (The warning light is lit up in the instrument cluster or **not**).
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.
✓ The trailer has a rigid drawbar.

WARNING

The increased safety offered by the trailer stabilisation must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise.

CAUTION

- The trailer stabilisation need not be able to correctly detect all of driving situations.
- Trailers that sway slightly may not always be detected by the trailer stabilisation and are thus not stabilised accordingly.
- Release the pressure on the accelerator pedal if the system is being regulated.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.

Note

The trailer stabilisation works for both braked and unbraked trailers.

Anti-theft alarm system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

If the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 39.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.

✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
✓ the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Safety equipment ____ 171
Before setting off ____ 171
What influences driving safety? ____ 172

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Safety equipment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.
- Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- Belt force limiters for the front seats.
- Belt tensioners for the front seats.
- Seat belt height adjusters for front seats.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- Driver's knee airbag.
- Front side airbags.
- Rear side airbags.
- Head airbags.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- Head restraints adjustable for height[1].
- Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries during an accident caused by the deployed airbag.

Before setting off

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.
- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.

[1] Not valid for sport seats.

› Secure all items of luggage » page 85, *Luggage compartment*.
› Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
› Adjust the mirrors, the front seat and head restraint to your body size.
› Advise your passengers to adjust the head restraints to their body size.
› Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 188, *Transporting children safely*.
› Adopt the correct seated position » page 172, *Correct seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt. Also inform passengers to fasten the seat belt correctly » page 175, *Using seat belts*.

What influences driving safety?

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.
› Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
› Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol or drugs.
› Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
› Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
› Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Correct seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver 173
Correct seated position for the front passenger 173
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats 174
Examples of an incorrect seated position 174

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper seated position.
▪ At all times, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the person's body size and the seat belt must be attached properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
▪ If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
▪ If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
▪ The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

! WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions.
▪ Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
▪ When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
▪ Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the driver

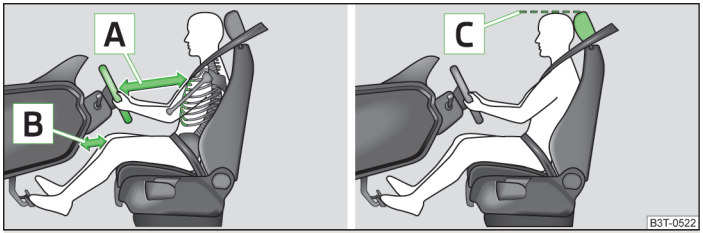

Fig. 159 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct head restraint position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 172.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.
› Position the steering wheel so that there is a gap of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the chest A » Fig. 159, and that the distance between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag is at least 10 cm B.
› Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head [1] C.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 175, *Using seat belts*.

Manual driver seat adjustment » page 68.

Electrical driver seat adjustment » page 68.

Correct seated position for the front passenger

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 172.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.
› Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head [1] C » Fig. 159 on page 173.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 175.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 185, *Deactivating airbags*.

Manual front passenger adjustment » page 68.

Electrical front passenger seat adjustment » page 68.

[1] Not valid for sport seats.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 172.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head C » Fig. 159 on page 173.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 175, *Using seat belts*.
› Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 188, *Transporting children safely*.

Examples of an incorrect seated position

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 172.

The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if your seatbelts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

› Do not stand up.
› Do not stand on the seats.
› Do not knee on the seats.
› Do not tilt the seat backrest too much to the back.
› Do not lean against the dash panel.
› Do not lie on the rear seat bench.
› Do not sit only on the front area of the seat.
› Do not sit facing to the side.
› Do not lean out of the window.
› Do not put your feet out of the window.
› Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
› Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.
› Do not transport somebody in the footwell.
› Do not drive without fastening the seat belt.
› Do not remain in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

Fig. 160
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a head-on collision ____ 176
Fastening and unfastening seat belts ____ 177
Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats ____ 178

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 160.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is as much as possible absorbed by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy in the best possible way. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 188.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 177, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 172, *Correct seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions to ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed.

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the seat belts is properly.

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper use of the seat belts.
- Never use one seat belt to secure two people (including children). The seat-belt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 73.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for proper use of the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 200.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a head-on collision

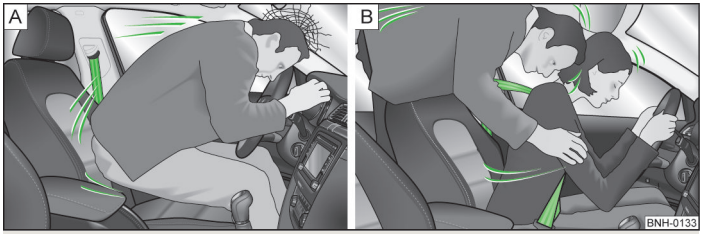

Fig. 161 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen » Fig. 161 – A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear seat occupants fasten their seat belts as they will otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front » Fig. 161 – B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

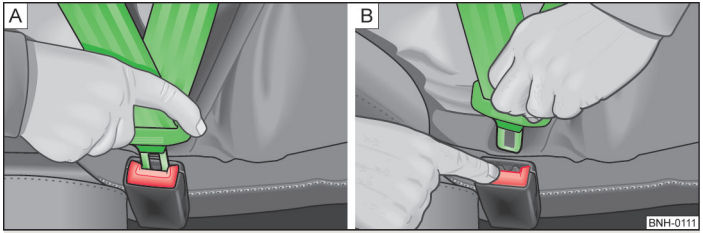

Fig. 162 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

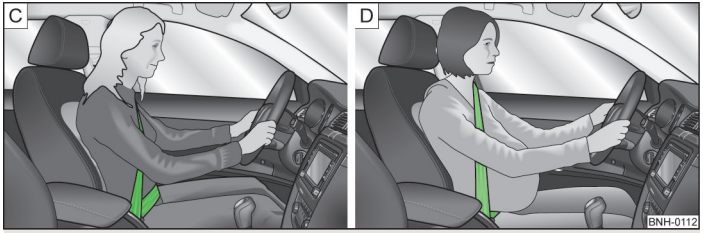

Fig. 163 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint[1)] before fastening the seat belt » page 172.
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle » Fig. 162 - A that is part of the seat until it clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 163 – C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

On expectant mothers, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 163 – D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 162 – B, the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

[1)] Not valid for sport seats.

Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats

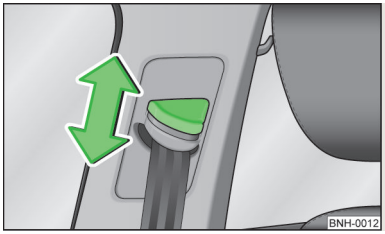

Fig. 164
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 164.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reel and belt pretensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Intertia reel ____ 178
Belt tensioners ____ 178

Intertia reel

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 178.

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also block when during full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 178.

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

! WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 180
Airbag deployment 180

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 172, *Correct seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 180.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 18.

When the airbags are deployed they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system consists - depending on the vehicle equipment - of the following modules.
- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 182.
- Driver's knee airbag » page 183.
- Side airbags » page 183.
- Head airbags » page 184.
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 18.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 186.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag/activation in dash panel centre » page 186.

Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 180.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
- the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
- the hazard warning light is switched on;
- all the doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags 182
Driver's knee airbag 183
Side airbags 183
Head airbags 184

Front airbags

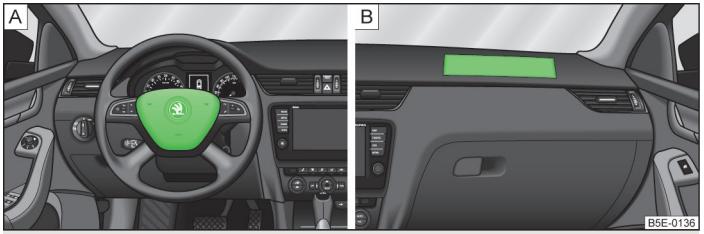

Fig. 165 **Driver airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel**

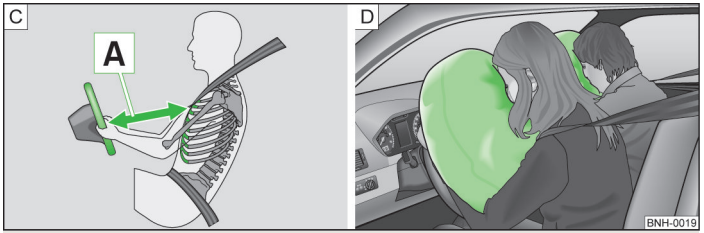

Fig. 166 **Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 181.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 165 – A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the stowage compartment » Fig. 165 – B.

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 166 - D. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Correct seated position
- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 166. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children
- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 185, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General
- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Driver's knee airbag

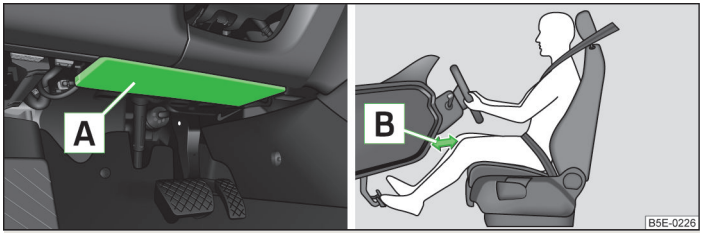

Fig. 167 **Driver's knee airbag below the steering column**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 181.

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag A is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 167.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs B and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 167. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Side airbags

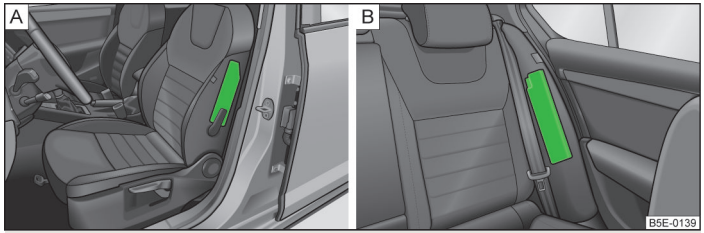

Fig. 168 **Installation location of the side airbags front/rear**

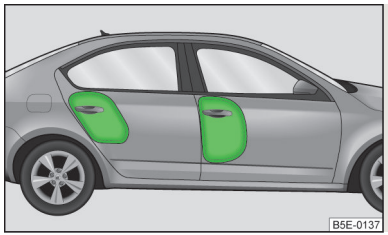

Fig. 169
Inflated side airbags

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 181.

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 168 - A.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » Fig. 168-B.

When the side airbags » Fig. 169 are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper seated position.
- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 190, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 188, *Child seat*.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates with pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason no adjustments must be carried out to the doors and door panels (e.g. additional installation of loudspeakers). Resulting damages can have a negative affect on the operation of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.
- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or an experienced specialist garage.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Head airbags

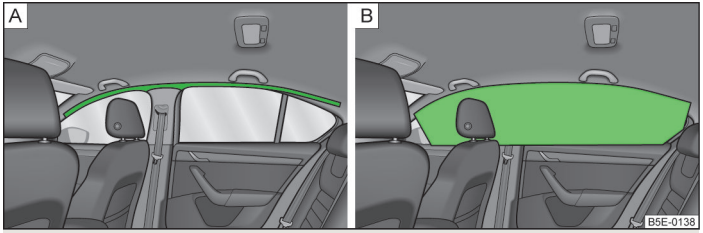

Fig. 170 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 181.

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » Fig. 170 – A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar » Fig. 170 – B.

Any impact of the head against parts of the interior or objects outside of the car, is cushioned by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

WARNING

General
- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could, conditions permitting, be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 200.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must no other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the passenger and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates with pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason no adjustments must be carried out to the doors and door panels (e.g. additional installation of loudspeakers). Resulting damages can have a negative affect on the operation of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.
- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or an experienced specialist garage.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags 185
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 186

Deactivating airbags

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 185.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones outlined below.
- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forward-facing child seat in some countries) » page 188, *Transporting children safely*.
- If not being able to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.

› If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
› If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 186, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags as appropriate.

Monitoring the airbag system
The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment
› The warning light lights up for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag switched off with the key switch in the storage compartment
› The warning light comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
› The OFF warning light 3 » Fig. 171 on page 186 comes on after the ignition is switched on.

Note

▪ The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
▪ A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Fig. 171 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag/warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 185.

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 2 » Fig. 171 **OFF**.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the OFF warning light in the **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF** text 3 lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 1 » Fig. 171 **ON**.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the ON warning light in the **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF** text 3 lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The ON warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the ON OFF warning light is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat ____ 189
Child safety and side airbag ____ 190
Classification of child seats ____ 190
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt ____ 190

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire travelling time! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 189, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 69. After removing the child seat, re-install the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODAvehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

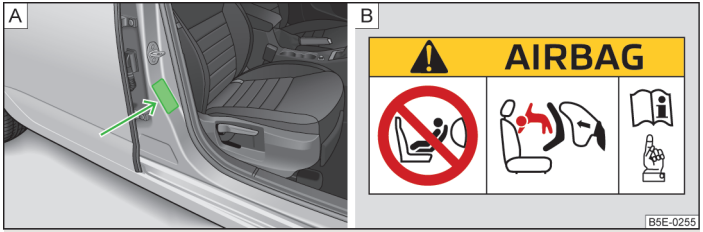

Fig. 172 **Stickers on the B-column on the passenger side / sticker on the passenger's sun visor**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 188.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

› It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat.

WARNING

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat » page 185, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 172 - A. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries the sticker is located on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 172 - B .
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- Once the child seat, in which the child is transported with the back to the direction of travel, is no longer used in the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Child safety and side airbag

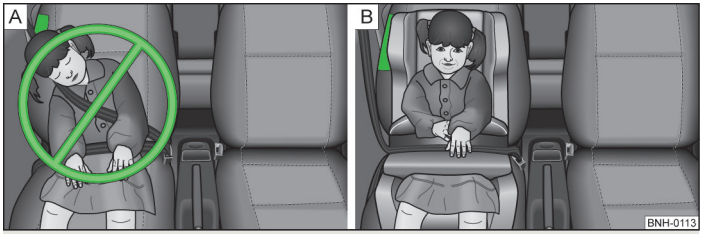

Fig. 173 **Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 188.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 173 – A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag so that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 173 – B.

! WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 188.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0 +	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 188.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening elements

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

eyes belonging to the lISOFIX system ____ 191
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system ____ 191
Locking eyes of the TOP TETHER system ____ 192

eyes belonging to the lISOFIX system

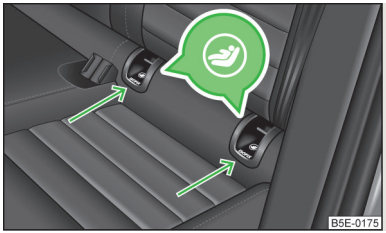

Fig. 174
Rear seat: ISOFIX

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 191.

There are two locking eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place » Fig. 174.

First remove the caps to access the locking eyes.

After removing the child seat, replace he caps.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the locking eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle with the help of the ISOFIX system if the child seat in question has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 191.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size category of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size category of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system, this suits installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The category "Semi-Universal" means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the approval "Universal" and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

Locking eyes of the TOP TETHER system

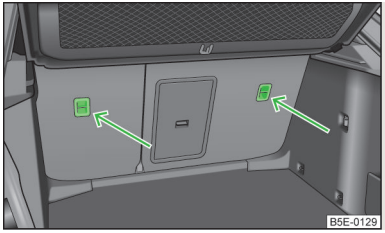

Fig. 175
Rear seat: TOP TETHER

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 191.

The locking eyes for attaching the belt to a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 175.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle

Washing your car

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand ____ 193
Automatic car wash systems ____ 193
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner ____ 194

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends, for example, on the following factors.

› Frequency of use.
› Parking situation (garage, below trees, etc.).
› Season of the year.
› Weather conditions.
› Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 193.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) - There is a risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 193.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then de-greased.

WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 193.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 196 .

Taking care of your vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork 195
Plastic parts 195
Rubber seals 195
Chrome parts 196
Decorative films 196
De-icing windows and exterior mirrors 196
Headlight lenses 197
Door lock cylinders 197
Cavity protection 197
Wheels 197
Underbody protection 198

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays**.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork
Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing
Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.

CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:
› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

De-icing windows and exterior mirrors

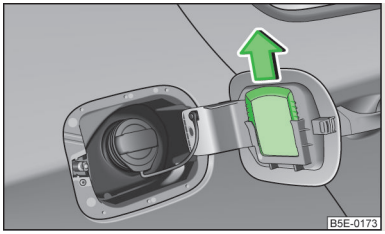

Fig. 176
Fuel filler flap: Ice scraper

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow. » Fig. 176.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

CAUTION

▪ The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
▪ Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
▪ Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.

▪ When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.
▪ Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

▪ **Never** wipe headlights to dry.
▪ Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
▪ Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Cavity protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Wheel rims
Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels
After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Underbody protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite - risk of fire!

Taking care of the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather ____ 199
Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara® ____ 199
Seat covers ____ 200
Seat belts ____ 200

Regular and proper care helps to ensure efficiency and to **maintain the value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

! WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!

! CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 198.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

Depending on the amount of wear-and-tear, the leather should be cleaned on a regular basis.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » !.

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Note

During the use of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 198.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, luggage compartment cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a specific cleaning agent to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface.

If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat covers from the direct rays of the sun to prevent fading.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

- Do not use any leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat covers.
- For Alcantara® seat covers do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners, or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 198.

Electrically heated seats
Do not clean the covers by **moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

Seat belts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 198.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Modifications, repairs and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ŠKODA Service Partners 201
Spoiler 201
Component protection 202
Airbags 202

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 201before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.

WARNING

- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.

ŠKODA Service Partners

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Spoiler

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a **spoiler** on the front bumper in combination with the **spoiler** on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.

Component protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

The component protection was developed as a protection mechanism for:
- impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft);
- impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle;
- the possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbags

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.
- Never drive with inner door panels removed.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refelling ____ 204
Unleaded petrol ____ 205
Diesel fuel ____ 206

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 177 on page 204 - B.

WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident this can get damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!

Refuelling

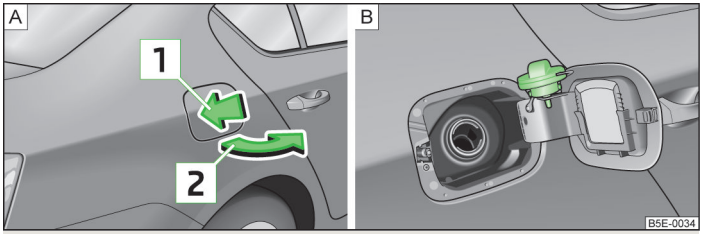

Fig. 177 **Open fuel filler flap/fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed**

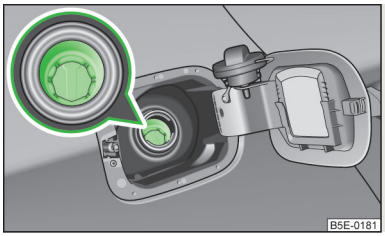

Fig. 178
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 204.

Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation) » page 111.

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 177 - A.
› Open the flap manually in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Turn the filler cap counterclockwise.
› Remove the filler cap and place the it into the bore of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 177 – B.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump.

› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it clockwise until it securely engages.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines
The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with a incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 178. This guard means it is only possible to refuel with the diesel pump nozzle.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister – danger of contaminating the body.
- The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **50 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 204.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded fuel** that complies with the standard **EN 228** (in Germany: **standard DIN 51626-1** or **E10** for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON and **91** RON or **DIN 51626-2** or **E5** for unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON and **98** RON).

Prescribed fuel – unleaded fuel 95/91 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol **91** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating **91** RON if petrol with the octane rating **95** RON is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Unleaded petrol with higher octane number
Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating**91** RON of unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Fuel additives
Only use unleaded petrol, which complies with the standard EN 228 (in Germany: standard DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 91 RON or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 98 RON), as these meet all of the requirements for fault-free engine operation. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used.

CAUTION

- All ŠKODA vehicles with petrol engines must only be operated with unleaded petrol. Just filling the tank with leaded petrol once will damage the exhaust system!
- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. Do not use any LRPfuel types (lead replacement petrol) fuels with metal constituents – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.
- Do not use any fuels with metal constituents – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.
- The use of unsuitable fuel additives can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Diesel fuel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 204.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel**, which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria, **GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004** in Russia).

All diesel engines can be operated with diesel fuel with a **maximum** content of 7 % bio-fuel **(B7)**, which complies with the standard **DIN 52638** in Germany (in Austria **C 1590**, in France **EN 590**).

On the Indian market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter – Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel
The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

Fuel additives
Fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar products) must not be added to the diesel fuel.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- Damage caused by using diesel fuel which does not comply with the standards are excluded from the warranty.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of biofuel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel (RME) can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Comply with the proscribed oil change intervals.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 208
Engine compartment overview 209
Radiator fan 209
Windscreen washer system 209

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scolding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

Before beginning work in the engine compartment, please read the following advice.
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position **P**.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

While working in the engine compartment, please read the following advice.
- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.

WARNING (Continued)

- Always safely store the coolant additive in its original container out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed - consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not leave any items such as cloths or tools in the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment while the engine is running.
- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, alternator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition unit – risk of death!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk of death! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed if work has to be carried out on the fuel or electrical systems.
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep fluids in their original containers and keep out of reach of children!
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks: the car jack is not sufficient for this – risk of injury!

WARNING (Continued)

- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire!
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. This is why after closing the bonnet, the lock must always be checked to ensure it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!
- Never open the bonnet using the locking lever » Fig. 179 on page 208.

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the specials tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage as part of an inspection service.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the correct specifications can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet

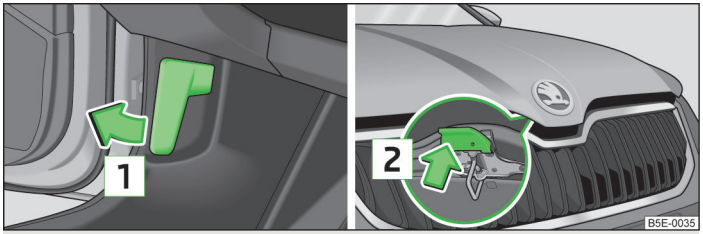

Fig. 179 **Bonnet release lever/release lever**

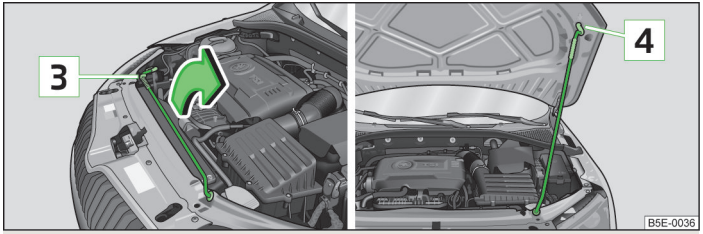

Fig. 180 **Securing the bonnet**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 206.

When the front door is closed, the bonnet cannot be unlocked with lever 1 » Fig. 179.

Opening

› Open the front door.
› Pull the release lever under the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 179.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
› Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.
› Take the bonnet support out of its holder 3 » Fig. 180 in the direction if the arrow and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the support in the opening 4 designed for it.

Closing

› Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Insert the bonnet support into the holder 3 designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in!**

Check whether the bonnet has been closed properly. Also make sure a vehicle with an **opened** bonnet does not appear in the instrument cluster display » page 26.

Engine compartment overview

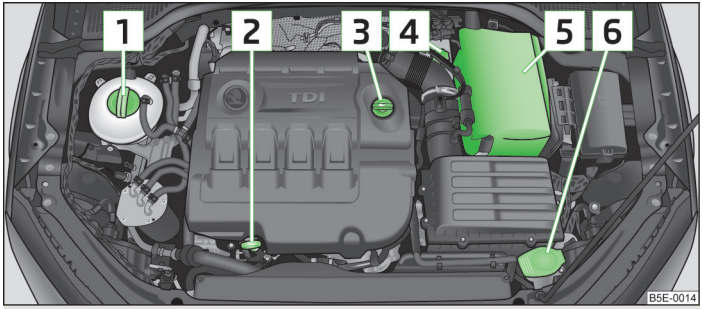

Fig. 181 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 206.

1 Coolant expansion reservoir ____ 213
2 Engine oil dipstick ____ 211
3 Engine oil filler opening ____ 212
4 Brake fluid reservoir ____ 214
5 Battery (below a cover) ____ 215
6 Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ____ 209

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 206.

After switching off the ignition, the fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

Windscreen washer system

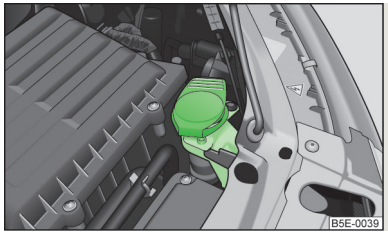

Fig. 182
Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 206.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment and contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlight cleaning system.

The **capacity** of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(in winter additionally with antifreeze)** which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity 211
Checking the oil level 211
Replenishing 212
Changing 212

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » page 211.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 206.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above the range A » Fig. 183 on page 211, do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specifications and capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 210.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity (in litres)
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.0
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI		
1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI		
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI		5.2

Diesel engines	Specification	Capacity (in litres)
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI	VW 507 00[a)]	4.6
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI		

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity (in litres)
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.0
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI		
1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI		
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI		5.2

Diesel engines	Specification	Capacity (in litres)
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI	VW 507 00[a)]	4.6
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI		

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **max. 0.5 l** only of the following engine oils may be used until the next oil change:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN/API SM;
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

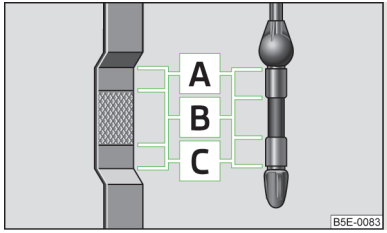

Fig. 183
Dipstick

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 210.

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine » Fig. 183.

Checking the oil level

› Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.
› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil sump and remove the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range A
No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range B
Oil **can** be refilled. Afterwards, the oil level can lie in the range A.

Oil level within range C
Oil **must** be replenished if the oil level is in the range B or lower.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range A, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The warning icon is displayed in the instrument cluster if the oil level is too low » page 22. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

The oil level must not exceed the range A » Fig. 183 – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system.

Replenishing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 210.

› Check the oil level » page 211.
› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 181 on page 209.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 211.
› Check the oil level » page 211.
› Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 210.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator » page 12.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity 213
Checking the coolant level 213
Replenishing 214

The coolant consists of water with a concentration of coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents the formation of scale.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40 %.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50 %.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the amount of coolant additive can only be increased up to a maximum of 60 % (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use the same antifreeze written on the antifreeze expansion tank » Fig. 184 on page 213.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 206.
- Do not continue your journey, if for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to be less than 40 %.
- Over 60 % of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.
- Other coolant additives that do not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the anticorrosion effect.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 184 on page 213.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.

Capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 212.

Coolant capacity[1]

Petrol engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	8.9
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	8.9
1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI	10.2
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	7.8
2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI	8.6

Diesel engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 l/105, 110, 135kW TDI CR - MG / DSG	11.6 / 11.9

Checking the coolant level

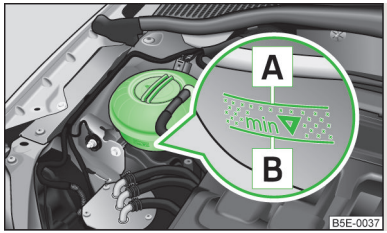

Fig. 184
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 212.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Inspecting the coolant level
› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle » Fig. 184.

Coolant level within range A
No coolant must be refilled.

The level may also rise slightly above the A marking when the engine is warm.

Coolant level within range A and B
Coolant **can** be refilled.

When the engine is cold, the coolant level must lie between the A and B markings.

Coolant level within range under B
Coolant **must** be refilled.

[1] On vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation), the coolant capacity is approx. 1 l larger.

When the engine is cold, refill the coolant between the markings A and B.

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the warning icon lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 21, *Coolant*. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant
A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 212.

Only refill with new coolant.

› Switch off the engine.
› Allow the engine to cool.
› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level 214
Changing 215

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 206.
- If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, STOP do not continue your journey – risk of accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection services.

Checking the brake fluid level

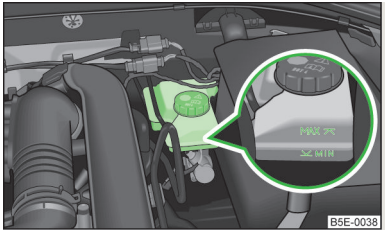

Fig. 185
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 185.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the warning light lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 15, *Braking system*.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:
› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Battery cover 217
Checking the battery electrolyte level 217
Charging a vehicle battery 218
Disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery 218
Automatic load deactivation 219

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Description
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage occurring. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

! WARNING

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. The general applicable safety rules and the following warnings must be observed without exception.
- Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by safety glasses or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks).

WARNING (Continued)

- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the relevant eye immediately with clear water for several minutes - consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, seek immediate medical assistance!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with a naked flame and light.
- Smoking or to carrying out any activities which produce sparks are prohibited.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all of the electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (**–**) on the battery.

CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first of all disconnect the negative terminal (**–**) of the battery, followed by the positive terminal (**+**).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first of all connect the positive terminal (**+**) of the battery, followed by the negative terminal (**–**). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (**–**) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Battery cover

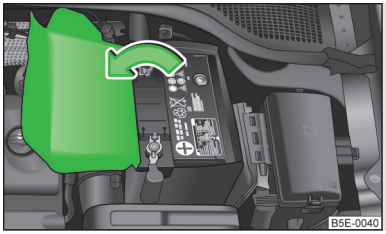

Fig. 186
Engine compartment: Polyester cover of vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 215.

The battery is located in the engine compartment - in some models, underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 186.

› Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

The edge of the polyester battery cover is inserted between the battery and the side wall of the battery cover when working on the battery.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

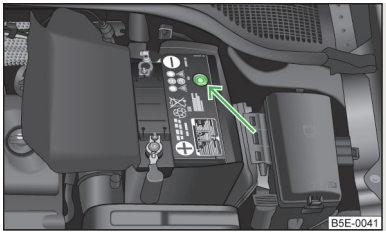

Fig. 187
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 215.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the so-called magic eye » Fig. 187, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Note

The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Charging a vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 215.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
- Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer**.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, so-called "**quick-charging**".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

Replacing the vehicle battery
When replacing a battery, the new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, amperage and be the same size. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 236, *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system*.

Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

Disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 215.

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free:

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 47
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» *Operating instructions for Infotainment Radio* or » *Operating instructions for Infotainment Navigation*
Setting the clock	» page 12
Data in the multifunction display are deleted	» page 28

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 215.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the bettery is subjected to heavy loads. This manifests itself by the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
› Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or in case of emergency shut off completely.

CAUTION

▪ Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
▪ Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres 221
New tyres 222
Unidirectional tyres 223
Tyre control display 223
Spare wheel 224
Full wheel trim 225
Wheel bolts 225
Wheel bolts 225

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed for the use of tyres.
- Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

The following instructions for the use of tyres must be observed.
- During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- On all four wheels, use only radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- For safety reasons, do no replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *load bearing capacity* of mounted tyres – risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *speed* of mounted tyres – risk of accident!
- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding damage and wear of tyres.
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface particularly at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the tyre inflation pressure.
- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling – risk of an accident!
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater rolling resistance. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.

WARNING (Continued)

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the spare wheel.
- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » page 224, *Spare wheel*.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost dust caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or the opposite running direction, drive carefully as the optimum characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

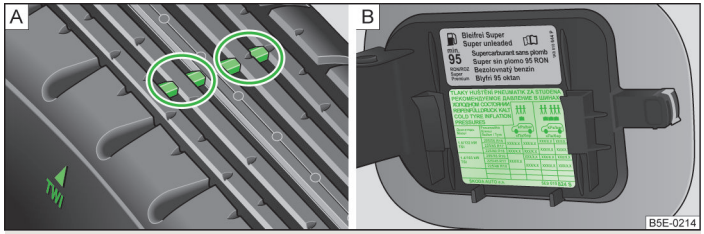

Fig. 188 **Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/Open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre size and tyre inflation pressure**

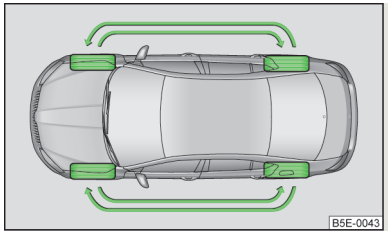

Fig. 189
Changing wheels around

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

The life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style, and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for **tyres** are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 188 – B.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

With greater payload, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, there are a wide range of influences which may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors
An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres.

Tyre damage
Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and perpendicularly wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre profile immediately.

Changing wheels around
If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend changing the front wheels around with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 189. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you change the tyres around every 10000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to obtain optimal tyre life.

Storing tyres
Mark them previously used tyres so that you are able to fit them on again to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are located multiple times depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre » Fig. 188 – A. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age
Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. Therefore, we recommend not to use summer or winter tyres that are older than 6 years or 4 years respectively.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings
195/65 R 15 91 T

What this means is:

195	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 188 on page 221 - B
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 188 on page 221 - B
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial » Fig. 188 on page 221 - B
15	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 188 on page 221 - B
91	Load index » !
T	Speed symbol » !

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly only on the *inside of wheel*). e.g.

DOT ... 10 13...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2013.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permisible load on each indvidua tyre.

91 615 kg
92 630 kg
93 650 kg

94 670 kg
95 690 kg
97 730 kg
99 775 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with mounted tyres for the respective category.

M 130 km/h
Q 160 km/h
R 170 km/h
S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol for your vehicle are listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are mainly.

✓ Increased driving stability.
✓ Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
✓ Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Tyre control display

Fig. 190
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

Calibration

After changing the tyre inflation pressure » page 221, ! in section *Introduction*, after changing one or several wheels, the position of a wheel on the vehicle or when the warning light lights up while driving, a **calibration** of the system must be carried out as follows:

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » page 221.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Start the system calibration.

On vehicles **with Infotainment** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

On vehicles **with the radio preinstallation**.

› Press and hold the symbol button ⓘ» Fig. 190 for longer than 2 seconds.

While pressing the button ⓘ, the indicator light ⓘ illuminates. At the same time, the system memory is cleared and the new calibration process is started. This is confirmed by an acoustic signal followed by the warning light ⓘ going off.

If the warning light ⓘ does not go out after the calibration, this indicates a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Tyre pressure indicator

The warning light ⓘ lights up when any of the following conditions are true.
› The tyre inflation pressure is low.
› The structure of the tyre is damaged.
› The vehicle is loaded on one side.

› The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
› Snow chains are mounted.
› The spare wheel is mounted.
› One wheel per axle was changed.

For vehicles **with the Infotainment**[1] it can be determined which tires should be checked » *Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

WARNING

▪ When the warning light (!) illuminates, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
▪ Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the (!) may light up after a delay, or not at all.

CAUTION

▪ The tyre control display does therefore not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, as the system cannot detect an even loss of pressure.
▪ The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
▪ To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10000 km or once a year.

Spare wheel

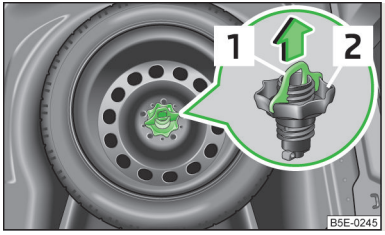

Fig. 191
Luggage compartment: Spare wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 191.

Take out wheel
› Open the boot lid.
› Raise the floor covering in the boot » page 94.
› Remove the box with the tool kit.
› Pull out safety lock 1 » Fig. 191 in a clockwise direction.
› Unscrew the 2 bolt in a counterclockwise direction.
› Remove the wheel.

Store wheel away
› Place the replaced wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Screw in bolt 2 » Fig. 191 in a clockwise direction, until the wheel is secure.
› Insert safety lock 1 » Fig. 191 in the opposite direction to which the arrow is pointing.
› Replace the box with the toolkit into the spare wheel.
› Fold back the floor covering in the boot » page 94.
› Shut the boot lid.

Install a wheel having the appropriate version and dimensions as soon as possible.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » !.

Temporary spare wheel
A yellow warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use this wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be specially attentive when driving.
› The inflation pressure for the temporary spare wheel is identical to the maximum inflation pressure of the standard tyres.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

[1] Does not apply to vehicles with the Infotainment Blues and Swing system.

WARNING

- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

CAUTION

Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Full wheel trim

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

Pulling off

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the valve opening provided.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. Avoid heavy knocks when the trim is not yet inserted in the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
- Make sure that the anti-theft wheel bolt is mounted in the bore in the region of the valve » page 232, *Securing wheels against theft*.
- If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts

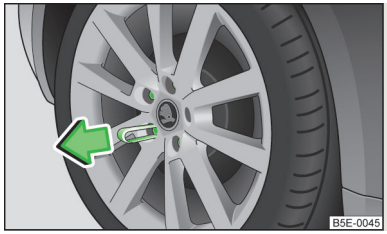

Fig. 192
Remove the cap

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

Pulling off

› Push the extraction pliers » page 228 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap » Fig. 192.
› Remove the cap.

Install

› Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels, e.g. light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts of the correct length and shape of spherical cap. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres ____ 226
Snow chains ____ 226

Winter tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 226.

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres on ice, snee and at temperatures below 7 °C have less grip. This is especially true of **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

To achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The winter tyre speed limit is set in the Infotainment system » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 226.

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
6J x 15[a)]	43 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 13 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle ____ 227
Fire extinguisher ____ 228
Vehicle tool kit ____ 228

First aid kit and warning triangle

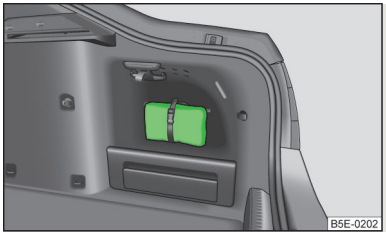

Fig. 193
Placing of the first-aid kit

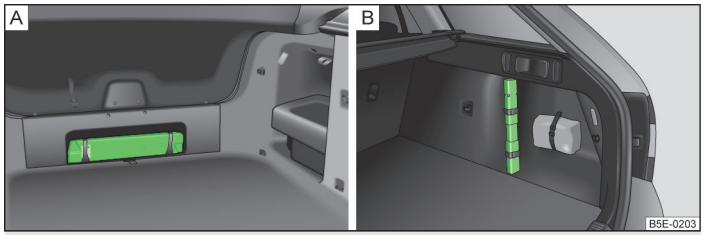

Fig. 194 **Placing of the warning triangle: Octavia/Octavia Estate**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 227.

First-aid box
The first aid kit A is attached by a strap in the right-hand storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 193.

Warning triangle – Octavia
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 194 - A.

Warning triangle – Octavia Estate
The warning triangle can be secured with straps in the right storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 194 - B.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Fire extinguisher

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 227.

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps in a holder under the driver seat.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

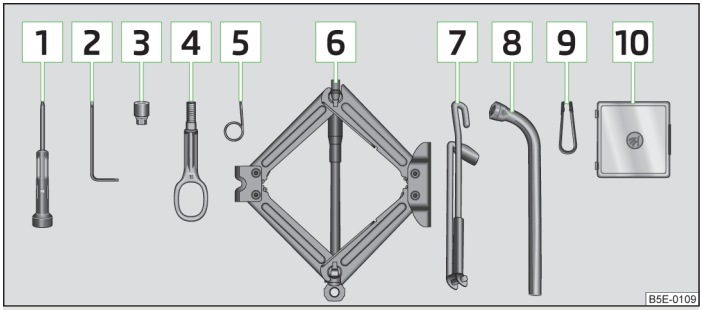

Fig. 195 **Vehicle tool kit**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 227.

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (if included in the vehicle) » Fig. 195.

1 Screwdriver
2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Car jack
7 Crank for the jack
8 Wheel wrench
9 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
10 Replacement bulb set

Screw the jack back into its home position after use to allow you to store it in the box with the toolkit.

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the luggage compartment.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparation 229
Changing a wheel 230
Follow-up tasks 230
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts 231
Raising the vehicle 231
Securing wheels against theft 232

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different from those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » page 222, *New tyres*.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for lifting the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are fastened too tightly, it can cause damage to the anti-theft wheel bolt and adapter.

Note

- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 229.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

› Let **all of the occupants get out.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine.
› Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox into position **P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› If a trailer is connected, remove it.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 228 and the **spare wheel** » page 224 from the luggage compartment.

Changing a wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 229.

› Remove the full wheel trim » page 225 or caps » page 225.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » page 231.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 231.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (alternating crosswise). Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last » page 231.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

! WARNING

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 220.

Follow-up tasks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 229.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special screw » page 224.
› Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
› Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

! WARNING

- If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

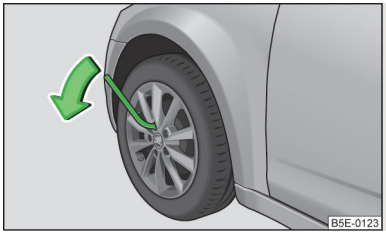

Fig. 196
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 229.

Loosening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 196.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 196 until it is tight.

! WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come off and fall down – risk of injury!

i Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 232.

Raising the vehicle

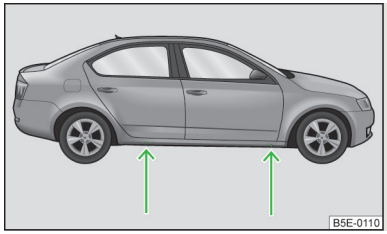

Fig. 197
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

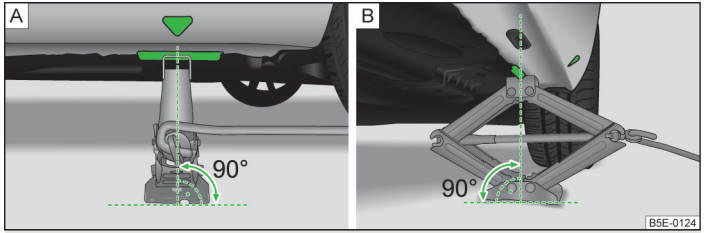

Fig. 198 **Attach lifting jack**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 229.

Position the car jack below the jacking point that is closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 197. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

› Insert the crank into the mount on the car jack » page 228.
› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw is positioned below the vertical web of the lower sill.
› Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the web » Fig. 198 - B.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its entire surface resting on level ground and ensure that the lever is located in a vertical position to the area where the claw grasps the web » Fig. 198 - A.

› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

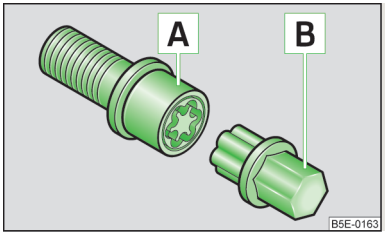

Fig. 199
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 229.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightended with the aid of the adapter » page 228, *Vehicle tool kit*.

› Insert the adapter B » Fig. 199 with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the safety wheel bolt A until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.

Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from a ŠKODA Partner, if necessary.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit 233
Preparations for using the breakdown kit 233
Sealing and inflating the tyre 234
Check after 10 minutes' driving 234

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre!

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.
› There is damage to the rim.
› The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
› The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
› There is damage to the tyre wall.
› Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
› If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Breakdown kit

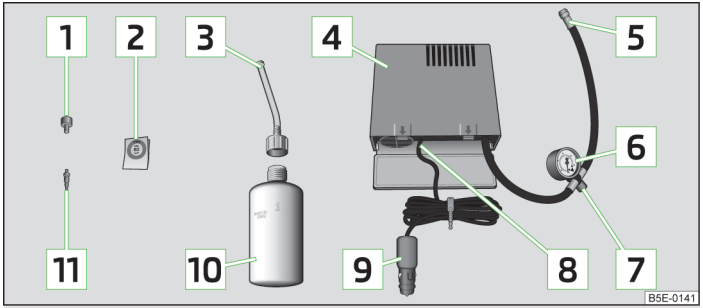

Fig. 200 **Components of the breakdown kit**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 232.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit

1 Valve remover
2 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Tyre inflation hose
6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
7 Air release valve
8 ON and OFF switch
9 12 volt cable connector
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 1 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core 11.

Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 232.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

› Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
› If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
› Let **all of the occupants get out.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever on the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 232.
› If a trailer is connected, remove it.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the luggage compartment.
› Stick the sticker 2 » Fig. 200 on page 233 on the dash panel in view of the driver.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 1 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 232.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflator bottle 10 » Fig. 200 on page 233 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 clockwise. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 1.

Inflating

› Screw the tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 200 on page 233 of the air compressor firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Check that the air release valve 7 is closed.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 9 into 12 Volt socket » page 79.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 8.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 234.

WARNING

- During inflation, the tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot – risk of injury!
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials – risk of fire!
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 232.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.
› Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest ŠKODA specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle ____ 235
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system ____ 236

WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 206.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – risk of caustic burns!
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

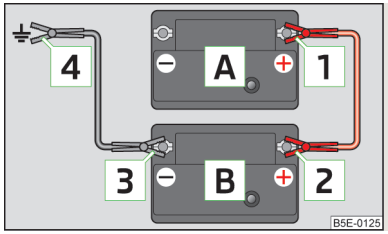

Fig. 201
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 235.

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 201.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

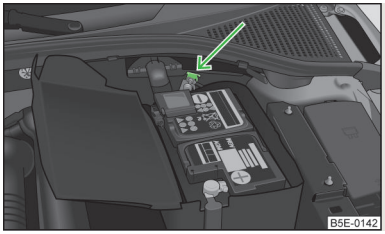

Fig. 202
Engine compartment: Earth

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 235.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable must be connected only to the ground point of the engine » Fig. 202.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye 237
Rear towing eye 237
Vehicles with a tow hitch 238

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not blocked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

! CAUTION

▪ Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 235, *Jump-starting*.
▪ If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
▪ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
▪ To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
▪ While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
▪ Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 237, *Front towing eye* or » page 237, *Rear towing eye* to the **detachable ball head of the towing device** » page 164.
▪ The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

Note

- We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.

Front towing eye

Fig. 203 **Front bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 236.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the area A » Fig. 203.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 1.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the area B of the cap under the right-hand side of the hole in the front bumper and then press on the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw in the towing eye in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 203 until it stops » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 2.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

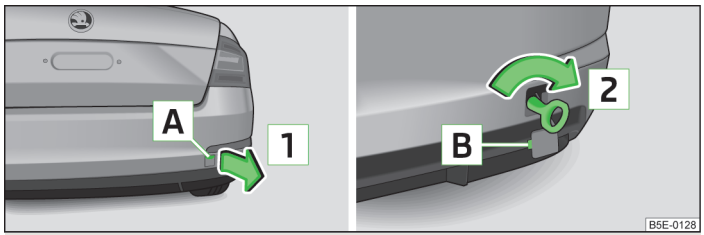

Fig. 204 **Rear bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 236.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the area A » Fig. 204.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 1.
› After screwing out the towing eye, thread the area B of the cap under the upper hand side of the bore in the rear bumper. Afterwards press onto the lower side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw in the towing eye in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 204 until it stops » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 2.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap » page 238, *Vehicles with a tow hitch*.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 236.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 164, *Towing device*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key 238
Synchronising the remote control 239
Replacing the battery in the auxiliary heater remote control 239

CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- When replacing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

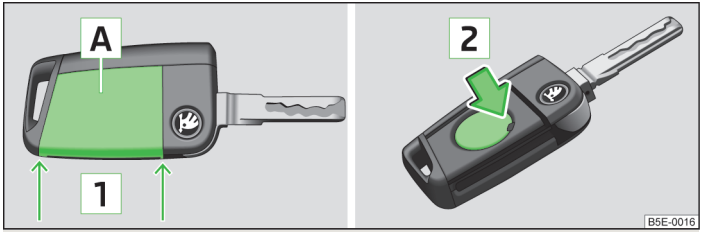

Fig. 205 **Remove cover/take out battery**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 238.

The battery is located under a cover A » Fig. 205.

We recommend having the key batteries replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows 1.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

Note

▪ The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 239.
▪ If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 238.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key was replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Replacing the battery in the auxiliary heater remote control

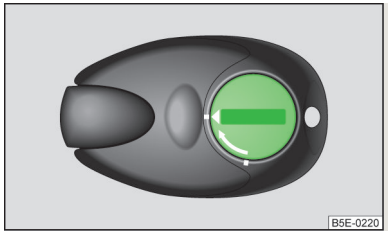

Fig. 206
Radio remote control: Battery cover

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 238.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 206.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
› Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
› Replace the battery.
› Return the battery cover.
› Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door 240
Locking a door 240
Unlocking the tailgate 240
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 241

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

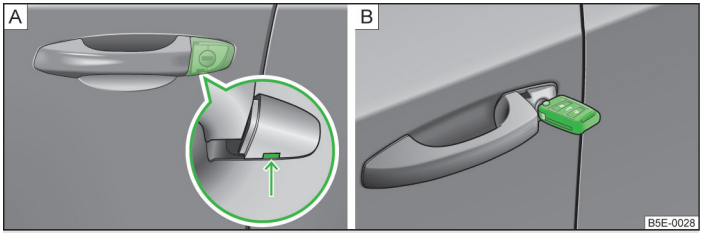

Fig. 207 **Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder/locking cylinder with key**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 239.

› Pull on the handle.
› Push the vehicle key into the recess on the bottom side of the cover in the region of the arrow and fold it upwards » Fig. 207 - A.
› Insert the vehicle key (the buttons facing upward) into the locking cylinder and lock/unlock the vehicle » Fig. 207 - B.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking a door

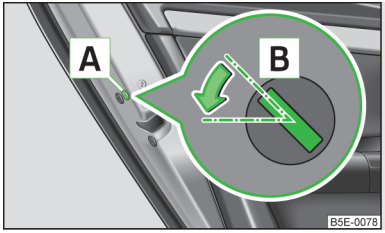

Fig. 208
Rear door: Emergency locking

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 239.

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the panel A » Fig. 208.
› Insert the key into the slot B and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
› Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it cannot be opened from the outside. The door is unlocked by pulling on the door opening lever and is then opened from the outside.

Unlocking the tailgate

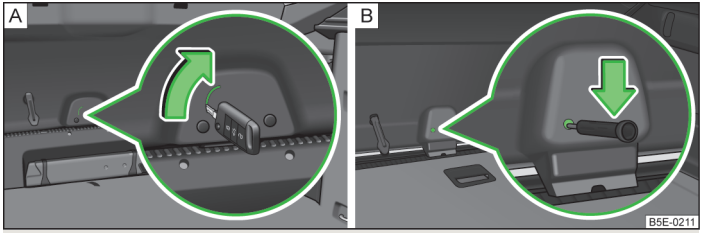

Fig. 209 **Emergency unlocking: Octavia/Octavia Estate**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 239.

Unlocking (Octavia)
› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 73.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel as far as the stop » Fig. 209 - A.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the luggage compartment lid.

Unlocking (Octavia Estate)
› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 73.
› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening of the trim as far as it goes » Fig. 209 - B.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

› Open the luggage compartment lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

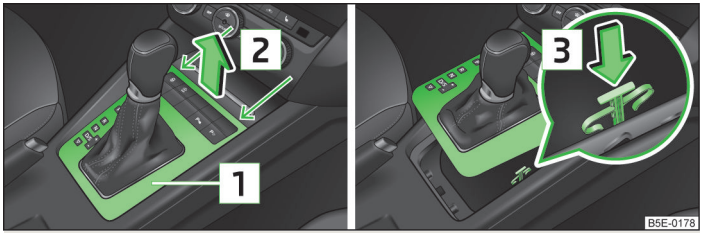

Fig. 210 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 239.

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Open the stowage compartment in front centre console » page 77.
› Grab hold of the cover 1 in the areas of the arrows and carefully raise it in the direction of the arrow 2 forwards and then backwards » Fig. 210.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow 3.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades ____ 241
Replacing the rear window wiper blade ____ 242

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

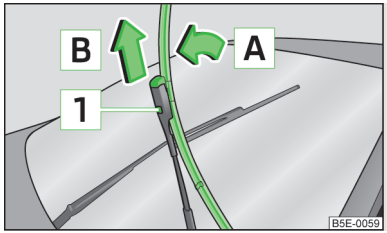

Fig. 211
Windscreen wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades
› Closing the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position 4 and keep it held for around 2 seconds » Fig. 43 on page 63.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade
› Raise the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen » Fig. 211.
› Tilt the wiper blade as far as it can go in the direction of the windscreen wiper arm - arrow A.
› Hold the upper part of the windscreen wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow B.

Attaching the wiper blade
› Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.

› Fold the wiper arms back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position 4 » Fig. 43 on page 63.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

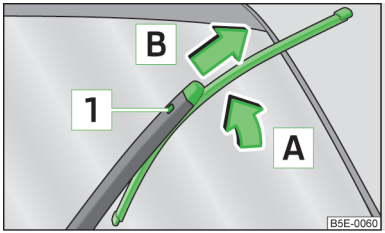

Fig. 212
Rear window wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

Removing the wiper blade

› Raise the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen » Fig. 212.
› Tilt the wiper blade as far as it can go in the direction of the windscreen wiper arm - arrow A.
› Hold the upper part of the windscreen wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow B.

Attaching the wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel – LHD ____ 244
Fuses in the dash panel – RHD ____ 244
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel ____ 245
Fuses in the engine compartment ____ 246
Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment ____ 246

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Replacing fuses

› Switch off the ignition and the appropriate consumer before changing a fuse.
› Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 245, *Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel* or » page 246, *Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment*.
› Take the plastic clip found from beneath the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 217 on page 246, insert over the fuse and remove it .
› A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20
white	25
green/pink	30
orange/green	40
red	50

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 206.
- Never repair fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage – risk of fire! A different electrical system could be damaged.

CAUTION

- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- There can be several consumer devices for one fuse, depending on the vehicle's equipment.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.
- Multiple power consuming devices can share a single fuse.

Fuses in the dash panel – LHD

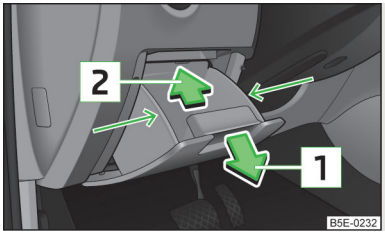

Fig. 213
Storage compartment on the driver's side: LHD

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 243.

On left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Replacing fuses

› Open the storage compartment » page 75.
› Grab hold of the storage compartment in the area of the arrows » Fig. 213.
› Fold out the storage compartment by pulling in the direction of arrow 1.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Fold back the storage compartment by pressing into the secured position in the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuses in the dash panel – RHD

Fig. 214 **Storage compartment on the front passenger's side: RHD**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 243.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located on the front passenger's side behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Removing the storage compartment and replacing the fuse

› Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » Fig. 214.
› Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Open the storage compartment.
› Unlock the brake rod of the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow 3 with the screwdriver.
› Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow 4.
› Replace the appropriate fuse » page 245.

Installing the storage compartment

› Pull in the storage compartment behind the brackets A » Fig. 214.
› Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 4.
› Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow 3 with a screwdriver.
› Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow 1.
› Close the storage compartment.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

Fig. 215
Schematic representation of the fuse box

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 243.

No.	Power consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Not assigned
4	Not assigned
5	Data bus control unit
6	Alarm sensor
7	Control unit for the air conditioning system, heating, receiver for remote control for the auxiliary heating, selector lever for the automatic gearbox, relay for the rear window heater, replay for the windscreen heater
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic socket
9	Haldex clutch
10	Touchscreen
11	Heated rear seats
12	Radio
13	Belt tensioner - driver's side
14	Air blower for air conditioning,heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Signal amplifier for telephone, telephone preinstallation
17	Instrument cluster
18	Not assigned
19	KESSY control unit
20	Steering wheel module
21	Not assigned
22	Luggage compartment door opening
23	Light - right
24	Panorama roof
25	Control unit for central locking front door right, power windows - left
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Tow hitch
29	Not assigned
30	Not assigned
31	Headlight - left
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag
34	TCS button, ESC, tyre control display, pressure sensor for air-conditioning, reverse light switch, dimming rear view mirror, START-STOP button, telephone preinstallation, control for heating of rear seats, sensor for air-conditioning, 230 V power socket, sound actuator
35	Headlight, headlamp beam adjustment, diagnostic connector, camera, radar
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Tow hitch
39	Control unit for central locking front door - right, power windows - front and rear right
40	12-Volt power socket
41	CNG relay
42	Control unit for central locking rear door - left, right, headlight cleaning system, windscreen wipers
43	Visor for gas discharge bulbs, interior lighting
44	Tow hitch

No.	Power consumer
45	Control unit for control of seat adjustment
46	230-Volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Not assigned
49	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
50	Not assigned
51	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
52	Not assigned
53	Relay for rear window heater

Fuses in the engine compartment

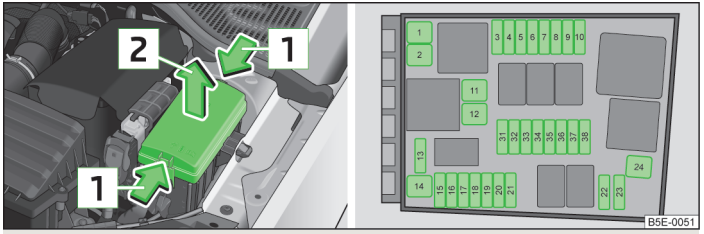

Fig. 216 **Fuse box cover in engine compartment/Schematic diagram of the fuse box**

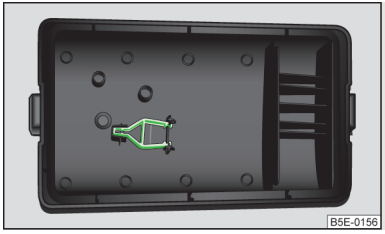

Fig. 217
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment: Plastic clip for fuses

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 243.

Replacing fuses

› Press together the interlocks of the cover simultaneously in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 216.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Place the cover on top of the fusebox.
› Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 243.

No.	Power consumer
1	Control unit for ESC
2	Control unit for ESC, ABS
3	Engine control unit
4	Engine control unit, relay for electric auxiliary heating
5	Engine components
6	Brake sensor, engine components
7	Coolant pump, engine components
8	Lambda probe
9	Ignition, control unit for glow plug system, engine components
10	Control unit for fuel pump, ignition
11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
14	Windscreen heater - left
15	Horn
16	Ignition, fuel pump
17	Control unit for ABS, ESC, engine control unit
18	Data bus control unit
19	Windscreen wipers

No.	Power consumer
20	Alarm
21	ABS
22	Engine control unit
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
31	Not assigned
32	Not assigned
33	Not assigned
34	Windscreen heater - right
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Control unit for auxiliary heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Headlights 248
Replacing the low beam bulb 248
Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights 248
Replacing bulb for daytime running lights and parking lights 249
Replacing the bulb for the fog lights 249
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light 250
Rear light (Octavia) 250
Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia) 251
Rear light (Octavia Estate) 252
Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia Estate) 252

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 206.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!
- The relevant lamp must always be switched off before a light bulb is replaced.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- Gas discharge bulbs and LED diodes are replaced by a specialist garage.

Headlights

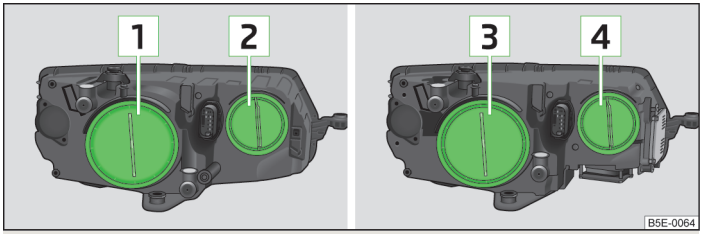

Fig. 218 **Bulb arrangement: Headlight with halogen bulb/with Xenon bulb**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

Headlight with halogen bulb

1 Low beam
2 Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light

Headlights with Xenon light

3 Xenon gas discharge bulbs
4 Daytime running and parking light

Replacing the low beam bulb

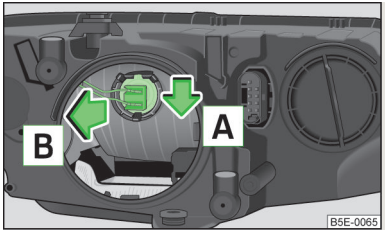

Fig. 219
Halogen headlight: Changing the bulb for the low beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

› Remove the rubber cover 1 » Fig. 218 on page 248.
› Turn the connector with the bulb in downwards in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 219 and remove it in the direction of the arrow B.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the bulb fit in the recesses of the reflector.
› Fit the connector.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights

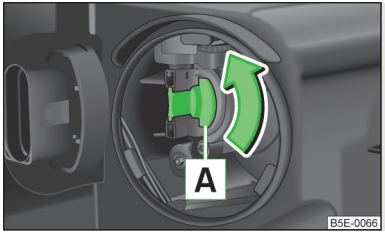

Fig. 220
Halogen headlight: Replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

› Remove the rubber cover 2 » Fig. 218 on page 248.
› Turn the bulb holder A » Fig. 220 **anti-clockwise** up to the stop and remove.
› Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing bulb for daytime running lights and parking lights

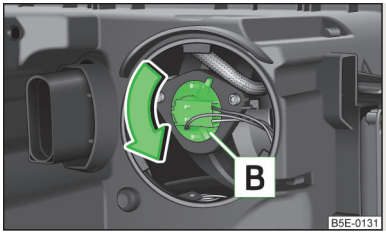

Fig. 221
Headlights with Xenon light: Changing the bulb for daytime running lights and parking light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

› Remove the rubber cover 4 » Fig. 218 on page 248.
› Turn the bulb holder B » Fig. 221 **anti-clockwise** up to the stop and remove.
› Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing the bulb for the fog lights

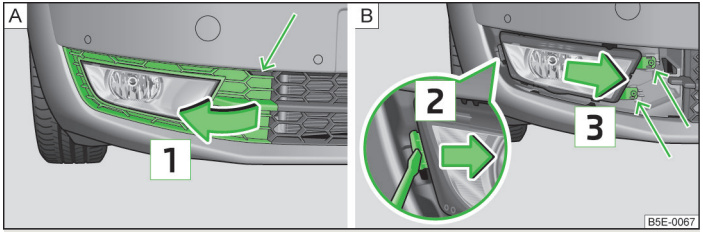

Fig. 222 **Front bumper: Remove the protective grille/fog light**

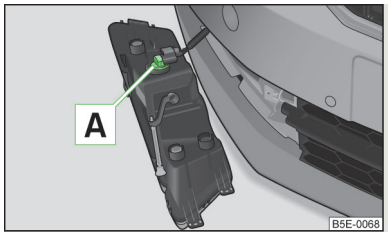

Fig. 223
Replacing the light bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

Removing the protective grille

› Release the protective grille in the area of the arrow » Fig. 222 - A using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 228, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 222.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the fog lamp » Fig. 222 - B.
› Unlock the fuse in the direction of the arrow 2 with the screwdriver.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the connector.
› Turn the bulb holder A » Fig. 223 **anti-clockwise** to the stop and remove.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn **clockwise** as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.
› Replace the fog lamp by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 222 and tighten.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

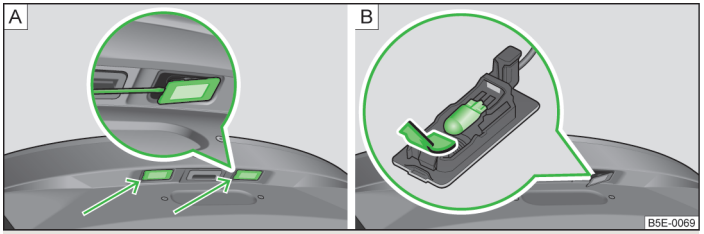

Fig. 224 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

› Open the luggage compartment lid.
› Insert a slotted screwdriver at the location indicated by the arrow » Fig. 224 - A, press it in lightly, and unlatch the springs.
› Remove the lamp.
› Pull the faulty bulb out of the holder in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 224 - B.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Replace the lamp and lightly press it until the spring latches.

Rear light (Octavia)

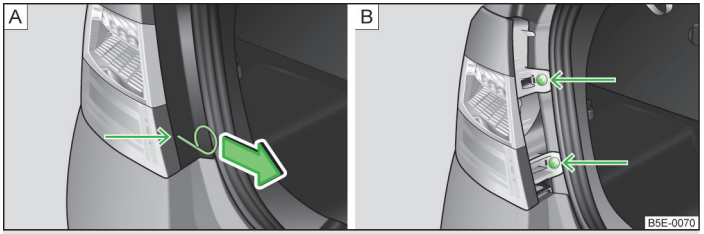

Fig. 225 **Remove cover/light**

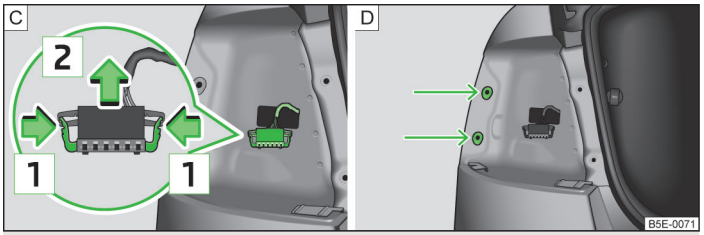

Fig. 226 **Installing the lamp connector/lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

Removing

› Open the luggage compartment lid.
› Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 228, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 225 - A.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 225 - A.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit » Fig. 225 - B to unscrew the lamp.
› Grip the rear lamp assembly and carefully remove it by waggling it and pulling opposite the direction of travel.
› Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 226 - C.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 2.

Install

› Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
› Insert the light into the brackets in the body » Fig. 226 - D.
› Carefully press the tail lamp assembly into the bodywork so that the bolts 1 » Fig. 227 on page 251 on the light latch with the mounts in the body » !.

Be careful not to pinch the cable bundle between the bodywork and light.

› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
› Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle is not pinched between the bodywork and the light as it is refitted – there is a risk of damage to the electric installation and water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has been pinched, we recommend that you have the connection of the light checked by a specialist garage.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia)

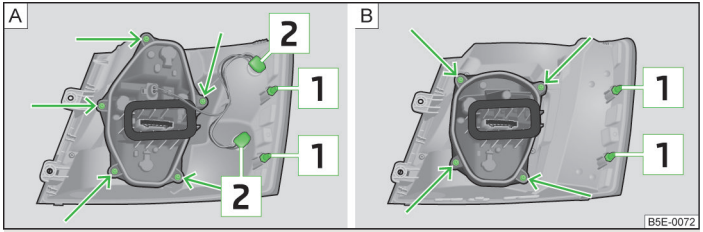

Fig. 227 **Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

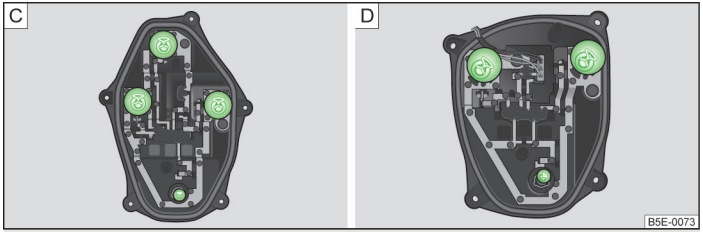

Fig. 228 **Inner part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

Outer part of the light

› Turn the bulb holder 2 » Fig. 227 **anti-clockwise** remove it from the lamp housing.
› Turn the faulty bulb in the holder **anti-clockwise** to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb in the holder and turn **clockwise** to the stop.
› Re-insert the holder and bulb into the lamp housing and turn **clockwise** to the stop.

Inner part of the light

› Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 227 - A or B with the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the tail light assembly.
› Turn the bulb holder **anti-clockwise** up to the stop and remove it from the lamp housing » Fig. 227 - C or D.
› Replace the bulb, insert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.
› Screw on the lamp holder carefully.

Rear light (Octavia Estate)

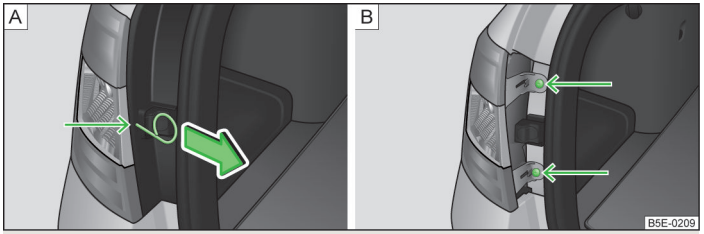

Fig. 229 **Remove cover/light**

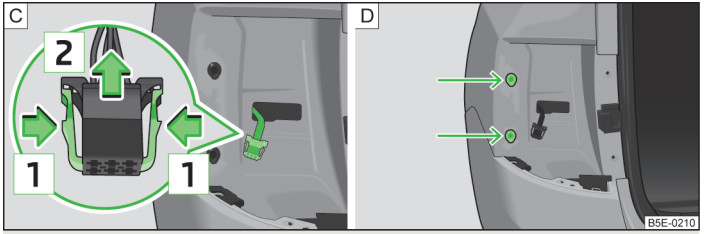

Fig. 230 **Installing the lamp connector/lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

Removing

› Open the luggage compartment lid.
› Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 228, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 229 - A.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 229 - A.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit » Fig. 229 - B to unscrew the lamp.
› Grip the rear lamp assembly and carefully remove it by waggling it and pulling opposite the direction of travel.
› Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 230 - C.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 2.

Install

› Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
› Insert the light into the brackets in the body » Fig. 230 - D.
› Carefully press the tail lamp assembly into the bodywork so that the bolts 1 » Fig. 231 on page 252 on the light latch with the mounts in the body » !.

Be careful not to pinch the cable bundle between the bodywork and light.

› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
› Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle is not pinched between the bodywork and the light as it is refitted – there is a risk of damage to the electric installation and water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has been pinched, we recommend that you have the connection of the light checked by a specialist garage.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia Estate)

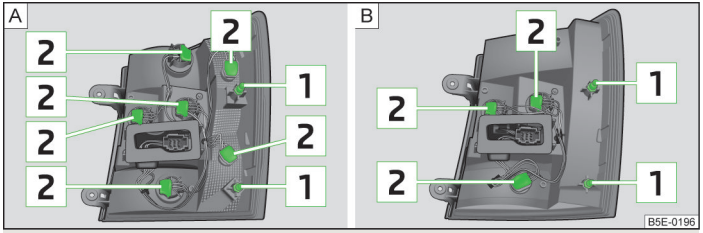

Fig. 231 **Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 247.

Outer part of the light

› Turn the bulb holder 2 » Fig. 231 **anti-clockwise** remove it from the lamp housing.
› Turn the faulty bulb in the holder **anti-clockwise** to the stop and remove.

› Insert a new bulb in the holder and turn **clockwise** to the stop.
› Re-insert the holder and bulb into the lamp housing and turn **clockwise** to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle identification data 254
Dimensions 256
Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type 257

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

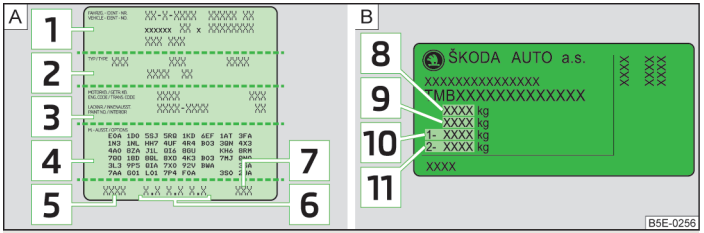

Fig. 232 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 254.

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 232 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed in the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Operating weight (in kg)
6 Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) - intra-urban/extra-urban/combined
7 CO_2 emission levels - combined (in g/km)

Type plate
The nameplate » Fig. 232 - B located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the driver's side.

The type plate lists the following weights:

8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

The VIN can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems*.

Engine number
The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

Operating weight
The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight » !.

The payload consists of the following components:
› Passengers
› All items of luggage and other loads
› Roof load including roof rack system
› Equipment not included in the operating weight
› Trailer hook weight when towing (up to 75 kg and 80 kg for the Octavia Combi 4x4 vehicles).

Fuel consumption according to the ECE standards and EU guidelines
The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards standard urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and -120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

i Note

▪ If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.
▪ Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.

Dimensions

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 254.

Dimensions (mm)

		OCTAVIA	OCTAVIA RS	OCTAVIA ESTATE	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6
Length		4659	4685	4659	4659	4685
Width		1814	1814	1814	1814	1814
Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017	2017	2017
Height	Basic dimension.	1461	-	1465	1465	-
	Vehicles with a rough road package.	1476	-	1480	1480	-
	Vehicles with a SPORT package.	1446	1449	1450	-	1452
Clearance	Basic dimension.	140	-	140	139	-
	Vehicles with a rough road package.	155	-	155	154	-
	Vehicles with a SPORT package.	125	128	125	-	127
Wheel base	Basic dimension.	2686	2680	2686	2680	2680
	Vehicles with the 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine.	2680	-	2680	-	-

Track gauge front/rear

Rim dimensions	1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI	1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI
15 "	1549/1520	1549/1520	-	-	-
16 "	-	-	1543/1514	1543/1512	-
17 "	-	-	-	-	1535/1506

Track gauge front/rear

Rim dimensions	1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI	1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./105 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI
15 "	1549/1520	1549/1520	-	-	-
16 "	-	-	1543/1514	1543/1514	-
17 "	-	-	-	-	1535/1506

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 254.

The specified values were obtained in accordance with rules and conditions that are set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data of motor vehicles.

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
63/4300-5300	160/1400-3500	4/1197

	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG5
Top speed (km/h)	181	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.0	12.2
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100[a]/1300[b]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	620

[a] Uphills up to 12 %.
[b] Uphills up to 8 %.

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
77/4500-5500	175/1400-4000	4/1197

	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA MG6[a]	OCTAVIA DSG7[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG5	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG7[a]
Top speed (km/h)	196	196	196	193	193	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.3	10.3	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.6
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1300[b]/1500[c]					
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	610	620	620	620	630

[a] Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.
[b] Uphills up to 12 %.
[c] Uphills up to 8 %.

1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
103/4500-6000	250/1500-3500	4/1395

	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG7	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	215	215	212	212
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.5	8.5	8.6
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500[a]/1800[b]			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	620	630	630	640

[a] Uphills up to 12 %.
[b] Uphills up to 8 %.

1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)		Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
MG6, DSG6	132/5100-6200	250/1250-5000	4/1798
DSG6 4x4	132/4500-6200	280/1350-4500	

	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG7	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG7	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG6[a]
Top speed (km/h)	231	231	229	229	227
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.3	7.4	7.4	7.5	7.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600[b]/1800[c]				
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	650	660	660	670	720

[a] Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.
[b] Uphills up to 12 %.
[c] Uphills up to 8 %.

2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
162/4500-6200	350/1500-4400	4/1984

	OCTAVIA RS MG6[a]	OCTAVIA RS DSG6[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG6[a]
Top speed (km/h)	248	245	244	242
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.8	6.9	6.9	7.1
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600[b]/1800[c]			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	710	720	720	730

[a] Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.
[b] Uphills up to 12 %
[c] Uphills up to 8 %

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
66/2750-4800	230/1400-2700	4/1598

	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG5
Top speed (km/h)	186	183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.2	12.3
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400[a]/1700[b]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	640	650

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
77/3000-4000	250/1500-2750	4/1598

	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA DSG7[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG5	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG7[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6 4x4[a]
Top speed (km/h)	194	194	191	191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.8	10.9	11.0	11.1	11.7
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500[b]/1800[c]				1700[b]/2000[c]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	640/650[a]	650	650/660[a]	660	710

[a] Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.
[b] Uphills up to 12 %.
[c] Uphills up to 8 %.

2.0 ltr./105 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
105/3500-4000	320/1750-3000	4/1968

	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG6	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG6
Top speed (km/h)	215	212	213	210
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9	8.7	9.0
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600[a]/1800[b]			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	660	670	670	680

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
110/3500-4000	320/1750-3000	4/1968

	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG6[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG6[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6 4x4[a]
Top speed (km/h)	218	215	216	213	213
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5	8.6	8.6	8.7	8.7
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600[b]/1800[c]				2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	660	670	670	680	720

[a] Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.
[b] Uphills up to 12 %.
[c] Uphills up to 8 %.

2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
135/3500-4000	380/1750-3000	4/1968

	OCTAVIA RS MG6[a]	OCTAVIA RS DSG6[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6[a]	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG6[a]
Top speed (km/h)	232	230	230	228
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.1	8.2	8.2	8.3
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600[b]/1800[c]			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	730	740	740	750

[a] Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.
[b] Uphills up to 12 %
[c] Uphills up to 8 %

Index

A

Abroad
Driving abroad 131
ABS
Function 133
Warning light 17
ACC 143
Accessories 200
Adaptive cruise control 143
automatic stop-start 146
Information messages 149
Instructions and Information 143
Operation 145
Operation Overview 146
Radar sensor 144
Set/change the desired speed. 147
Set time interval level 148
special driving conditions 148
Start control 146
Stop/resume control 147
Adaptive headlights (AFS) 54
Adjust
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 111
Adjusting
Exterior mirrors 66
Head restraints 69
Interior mirror 65
Manual air conditioning 106
Seats 67, 68
Adjusting the seats 67, 172
Adjustment
Headlight beam 52
Aerial 193
AFS 54
Airbag 180
Deactivating 185
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 186
Deployment 180
Front airbag 182
Head airbag 184
Knee airbag 183
Modifications and damage to the airbag system 202
Side airbag 183
Air bag
Warning light 18
Airbag system 180
Air conditioning system
Air outlets 102
Climatronic 107
Manual air conditioning system 105
Air outlets 102
Alarm
Switching off 39
Triggering 39
Anti-theft alarm system
Activating/deactivating 39
Trailer 169
Antilock Braking System 133
Area monitoring system 149
Armrest
front 72
rear 72
Artificial leather 199
Ashtray 78
ASR
warning light 16
Assistant systems
Front Assist 149
Assist system
ABS 133
Assist systems 132
ABS 17
Adaptive cruise control 143
ASR 16
Cruise Control System 141
Driving mode 156
DSR 134
EDL 134
ESC 17, 132
HBA 134
Headlight assist 55
HHC 134
Lane Assist 158
Park assist 137
Parking aid 135
ProActive passenger protection 158
START-STOP 153
TCS 133
XDS 134
Auto-check control 13
Automatic driving lamp control 53
Automatic gearbox
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 241
Starting-off and driving 124
Tiptronic 123
Warning light 14
Automatic load deactivation 219
Automatic transmission 121
Kickdown 124
Malfunction 125
Selector lever lock 123
Using the selector lever 122
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 110
Adjust 111
Radio remote control 111
Switching on/off 111
Avoiding damage to the vehicle
Driving through water 130
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 130

B

Ball head
Check fitting 166

Ball rod
installing 165
Ready position 165
removing 166
Battery
In the remote control key 238
Replacing in the auxiliary heater remote control 239
Belts 175
Belt tensioners 178
Bonnet
Closing 208
Opening 208
Boot lid
Automatic locking 41
Brake booster 120
Brake fluid 214
Changing 215
Checking 214
Brake pads
Warning light 19
Brakes
Brake assist systems 132
Brake booster 120
Brake fluid 214
Handbrake 120
Running in 126
Warning lights 15
Braking 119
Information for braking 119
Breakdown kit 233
Break recommendation
See Fatigue detection 162
Bulbs
Replacing 247
Warning icon 22
Button in the driver's door
Electrical power windows 44

C

Car computer
see multifunction display 28
Cargo element 92
Car key
lock 33
unlock 33
Car park ticket holder 75
Carrier 98
Cavity protection 197
Central locking button 36
Changing
Brake fluid 215
Engine oil 212
Wheels 229
Changing a wheel
Follow-up tasks 230
Preparation 229
Removing and refitting a wheel 230
Charging a vehicle battery 218
Check
Fit ball head properly 166
Checking
Battery electrolyte level 217
Brake fluid 214
Coolant 213
Engine oil 211
Oil level 211
Windscreen washer fluid 209
Children and safety 188
Child safety
Side airbag 190
Child safety lock 37
Child safety seat
Use of child safety seats 190
Child seat
Classification 190
ISOFIX 191
on the front passenger seat 189
TOP TETHER 192
Use of ISOFIX child seats 191
Chrome parts
refer to Taking care of your vehicle 196
Cigarette lighter 78
Cleaning 193
Alcantara 199
Artificial leather 199
cloths 199
Covers of electrically heated seats 200
Headlight lenses 197
Natural leather 199
Plastic parts 195
Wheels 197
Climatronic 107
automatic mode 108
Control elements 107
Controlling blower 109
Cooling system 108
Defrosting windscreen 110
Recirculated air mode 109
Setting temperature 108
Clock 12
Clothes hook 82
Cockpit
12-volt power outlet 79
Ashtray 78
Cigarette lighter 78
General view 7
Lighting 58
Storage compartments 74
Useful equipment 74
COMING HOME 57
Component protection 202
Computer
see multifunction display 28
Convenience consumers 128
Convenience operation of sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate) 50
Convenience operation of sliding/tilting roof (Octavia) 48

Coolant 212
Checking 213
Replenishing 214
Temperature gauge 11
Warning icon 21
Correct seated position 172
Driver 173
Front passenger 173
Instructions 174
Rear seats 174
Counter for distance driven 12
Cruise control system
Activating/deactivating 142
Changing the stored speed 142
Storing and maintaining speed 142
Switching off temporarily 142
Warning light 19
Cruise Control System 141
Cup holders 77

D

Daytime running lights 52
De-icing the windscreen and rear window 60
Deactivating an airbag 185
Decorative films 196
Delayed locking of the boot lid
see Boot lid 41
Diesel
refer to Fuel 206
Diesel fuel
Operation in winter 206
Diesel particle filter 22
Digital clock 12
Dipstick 211
Display 10
Coolant temperature 11
Fuel supply 11
Distance driven 12
Door
Child safety lock 37
Closing 37
Emergency locking the driver's door 240
Opening 37
Door locking
Emergency 240
Doors
Emergency locking 240
Door warning 26
double hooks 87
Driver Steer Recommendation (DSR) 134
Driving
Abroad 131
Driving through water on streets 130
Emissions 254
Fuel consumption 254
Driving mode 156
Driving through water 130
DSR 134

E

Eco mode 157
Economical driving 126
Ballast 128
Driving at full throttle 127
Idling 127
Looking ahead 126
Regular maintenance 129
Short distances 128
Tyre inflation pressure 128
Economic driving
Looking ahead 127
Eco tips 26
EDL 134
Electrical power windows 46
Button in the driver's door 44, 45
Button in the rear doors 46
Operational faults 47
Electric luggage compartment lid
Acoustic signals 43
Adjusting the top lid position 44
Deleting the top lid position 44
Force limiter 41
Malfunctions 44
manual operation 41
Operating 42
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 134
Electronic immobiliser 115
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 132
Emergency
Automatic gearbox 241
Changing a wheel 229
Door locking 240
Hazard warning light system 57
Jump-starting 235
Locking the driver's door 240
Start engine - KESSY 119
Switching off the ignition -KESSY 119
Towing the using the tow hitch 238
Towing the vehicle 236
Tyre repair 232
Unlocking the driver's door 240
Unlocking the tailgate 240
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 228
First aid kit 227
Jack 228
Vehicle tool kit 228
Warning triangle 227
Emissions 254
Engine
Running in 125
Engine compartment 206
Brake fluid 214
Coolant 213
Overview 209
Vehicle battery 215

Engine oil 210
Capacity 211
Changing 212
Checking 211
Replenishing 212
Specifications 211
Warning icon 21, 22
Entry lighting 60
Environment 126
Environmental compatibility 129
Environmentally friendly driving 126
EPC
Warning light 18
ESC
Function 132
Warning light 17
Exhaust inspection system
Warning light 17

F

Fans 74
Fastening elements 86
Fatigue detection 162
Function 163
Information messages 163
Films 196
Fire extinguisher 228
First aid kit 227
Floor covering
Fixing 88
Floor mats 121
See Floor mats 121
Fog lights 56
Warning light 19
Fog lights with the CORNER function 56
Force limiter
electrical power windows 46
electric luggage compartment lid (Octavia Estate) 41
sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate) 49
sliding/tilting roof (Octavia) 47
Foreign countries
Unleaded petrol 131
Front airbag 182
Front Assist 149
Activating/deactivating 152
City emergency braking 152
Information messages 153
Instructions and Information 150
Operation 151
Radar sensor 150
Front door warning light 60
Front interior light 58
Fuel 204
Diesel 206
Fuel gauge 11
refer to Fuel 204
Refuelling 204
Unleaded petrol 205
Warning icon 23
Fuel consumption 126
Fuses
Assignment 243
Assignment of fuses in the dash panel 245
Colour coding 243
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment 246
Plastic clip 246
Replacing 243

G

Gear
Recommended gear 26
Gear changing
lever 121
General view
Cockpit 7
Glasses storage box 80
Glow plug system
Warning light 18

H

Handbrake 120
Warning light 15
Hazard warning light system 57
HBA 134
Head airbag 184
Headlight assist 55
Warning icon 23
Headlight cleaning system
Headlight cleaning system 64
Headlights
Driving abroad 131
Headlight cleaning system 64
Replacing a bulb 248
Head restraint 69
Heater
Windscreen and rear window 60
Heating
Defrosting windows 104
Exterior mirrors 66
operating 103
Recirculated air mode 104
Seats 71
HHC 134
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 134
Hooks (Octavia Estate) 88
Horn 7
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 134

I

Ice warning
Waning icon 24
Ignition
see Ignition lock 115
Ignition lock 115
Immobiliser 115
Individual mode 157

Individual settings
Locking 36
Unlocking 36
Inertia reel 178
Information display 27
Information display 27
Information message
see KESSY 38
Information system 25
Door warning 26
Eco tips 26
Information on the display 25, 143
Multifunction display 28
Outside temperature 25
Recommended gear 26
Information System
Laptimer 26
Stopwatch 26
Instrument cluster 9
Auto-check control 13
Counter for distance driven 12
Display 10
Fuel gauge 11
Overview 9
Revolutions counter 10
see Instrument cluster 9
Service interval 12
Speedometer 10
Temperature gauge 11
Viewing the charge level of the vehicle battery 12
Warning icons 20
Warning lights 14
Interior monitor 40
ISOFIX 191

J

Jack 228
Jacking points
Raise vehicle 231
Jump-starting 235

K

KESSY
Information message 38
lock 38
Starting the engine 118
Switching off the engine 118
Switching off the ignition 118
Switching on the ignition 118
unlock 38
Unlocking/locking the steering 117
Key
Locking 33
Starting the engine 115
Stopping the engine 116
Unlocking 33
Knee airbag 183

L

Lane Assist 158
Activating/deactivating 160
Explanation of situations 160
Information messages 160
Operation 159
Warning light 19
Laptimer 26
LEAVING HOME 57
Lever
Main beam 53
Turn signal 53
Windscreen wipers 63
Licht
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 57
Light
Cockpit 58
Replacing bulbs 247
Tourist light 54
Light bulbs
Rear light (Octavia Estate) 252
Rear light (Octavia) 250
Lighting
Luggage compartment 85
Lights 51
Adaptive headlights (AFS) 54
Automatic driving lamp control 53
Daytime running lights 52
Fog lights 56
Fog lights with the CORNER function 56
Hazard warning light system 57
Headlight beam adjustment 52
Headlight flasher 53
Low beam 52
Main beam 53
Parking lights 58
Rear fog light 56
Side lights 52
Switching on/off 52
Turn signal 53
Warning lights 14
Lights on/off 52
Loads 254
Lock
Car key 33
Remote Control 34
Locking
Individual settings 36
KESSY 35
Key 33
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside 36
Long-cargo channel 84
Low beam 52
Luggage compartment 85
Compartment with cargo element 92
Cover 89
double sided floor covering 88
Emergency unlocking 240
Fastening elements 86
Fix floor covering 88
Fixing nets 87
Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate) 88
Folding double hooks 87

Lighting 85
Luggage net 89
Multifunction box 93
Multifunction box (Octavia Estate) 94
Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate) 90
see luggage compartment lid 41
Storage compartments under the floor covering 92
Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover 91
Stowing roof racks 91
Unlocking the tailgate 240
Variable loading floor 94
Luggage compartment cover 89
Luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate) 90
Luggage compartment lid 40
close 41
open 41
Luggage net 89

M

Main beam 53
Warning light 20
Maintenance 129
Decorative films 196
Manual air conditioning
adjusting 106
Recirculated air mode 106
Manual gear changing
See Gear changing 121
Manually setting air conditioning
Control elements 105
Map pockets on the front seats 82
Memory 30
Mirror
Additional interior mirror 65
Exterior mirrors 66
Mirrors
Interior mirror 65
Vanity 61
Modes of the automatic transmission 122
Modifications 200
Modifications and technical alterations
Airbags 202
Service 201
Spoiler 201
Multicollision brake 135
Multifunction box 93
Multifunction box (Octavia Estate) 94
Multifunction display
Functions 28
Information 28
Memory 30
Select information 30

N

Net partition 96
Behind the front seats 98
Behind the rear seats 97
Removing and refitting the housing 98
Nets 87
Normal mode 157

O

Oil
See Engine oil 211
Onboard computer
see multifunction display 28
Operation in winter
De-icing windows 196
Diesel fuel 206
Vehicle battery 217
Outside temperature 25
Overview
Engine compartment 209
Warning icons 20
Warning lights 14

P

Paintwork
See Paintwork care 195
Paintwork care 195
Park assist 137
Finding a parking space 138
Information messages 140
Parking 139
Parking
Automatic brake assist 140
Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space 140
Park assist 137
Parking aid 135
Parking aid 135
Automatic system activation when moving forward 137
Function 136
Road display 137
Parking vehicle 38
Part replacement 200
Passive safety
Before setting off 171
Driving safety 172
Safety equipment 171
Passive Safety 171
Pedals 121
Floor mats 121
Petrol
refer to Fuel 205
Polishing the paintwork
See Taking care of your vehicle 195
Power outlet
12 V 79
Power sockets
230 V 83
Power steering 114
Warning light 16
Power windows
Button in the front passenger door 46

ProActive passenger protection 158
Function 158
Warning light 18

R

Radiator fan 209
Radio remote control
Auxiliary heating 111
Raise vehicle 231
Rear-view mirror
Exterior mirrors 66
Rear fog light 56
Warning light 17
Rear interior light 59
Rear mirror 64
Interior mirror 65
Rear window - heater 60
Recirculated air mode
Climatronic 109
Manual air conditioning 106
Recommended gear 26
Refuelling 204
Fuel 204
Remote control
Replacing the battery 238
Synchronisation process 239
Remote Control
lock 34
unlock 34
Remote control key
Replacing the battery 238
Removable ski bag 84
Repairs and technical alterations 200
replacing
Vehicle battery 218
Replacing
Bulb for daytime running lights and parking lights 249
Bulb for main beam and daytime running lights 248
Bulb for the fog lights 249
Bulb for the licence plate light 250
Bulb in rear light (Octavia Estate) 252
Bulbs 247
Bulbs in rear light (Octavia) 251
Fuses 243
Fuses – engine compartment 246
Fuses – LHD 244
Fuses – RHD 244
Low beam bulb 248
Rear window wiper blade 242
Windscreen wiper blades 241
Replenishing
Coolant 214
Engine oil 212
Windscreen washer fluid 209
Revolutions counter 10
Roof luggage rack
Attachment points 99
Roof rack system 98
Roof load 100
Running-in
the first 1500 km 125
Running in
Brake pads 126
Engine 125
Tyres 126

S

Safe securing system 35
Safety 171
Child safety 188
Child safety seats 188
Correct seated position 172
Head restraints 69
ISOFIX 191
TOP TETHER 192
Saving electrical energy 126
Seals
Taking care of your vehicle 195
Seat belt
Warning icon 21
Warning light 16
Seat belt height adjuster 178
Seat belts 175
Belt tensioners 178
Cleaning 200
fastening and unfastening 177
Height adjustment 178
Seatbelts
Inertia reels 178
Seat belts
The physical principle of a head-on collision 176
Seat features 71
Seats
Armrest front 72
Electric adjustment 68
Folding front passenger seat 72
Head restraints 69
Heating 71
Manually adjusting 68
Rear armrest 72
save 70
Seat backrests 73
Storing in memory of remote control key 70
Seats and useful equipment 67
Adjusting the seats 67
see automatic gearbox
Manual shifting of gears on the multifunction steering wheel 123
Selecting driving mode 156
Selector lever
see Using the selector lever 122
Selector lever lock
Warning light 20
Service 201
Service display 12
Setting
Positions of the variable loading floor 95
Steering wheel 114
Setting the clock 12

Shifting gears
Driving and saving energy 127
Side airbag 183
Side lights 52
ski bag 84
Sliding/tilting roof
Closing the sun screen (Octavia Estate) 49
Closing (Octavia Estate) 49
Closing (Octavia) 47
Opening/closing the sun screen (Octavia Estate) 49
Opening and tilting (Octavia Estate) 49
Opening and tilting (Octavia) 47
Operation (Octavia Estate) 49
Operation (Octavia) 47
Snow chains 226
Spare wheel 224
Speedometer 10
see speedometer 10
Speed symbol
see Wheels 223
Spoiler 201
Sport mode 157
START-STOP 153
Manually activating/deactivating the system 155
Operating conditions of the system 155
Starting/shutting down the engine 154
Warning icon 23
Start and stop the engine - KESSY 116
Start and stop the engine with the key 114
Starting the engine
Jump-starting 235
Key 115
see KESSY 118
START STOP
Information messages 156
Jump-starting 236
Steering force assistance 114
Steering wheel 114
Stopping the engine
Key 116
Stopwatch 26
Storage compartment in rear centre console 82
Storage compartment on the passenger side 81
Storage compartments 74
Storage compartment under the passenger seat 81
Storage places 74
Storing skis 84
Sun screen 61
Sun visors 61
Switching off the engine
see KESSY 118
Switching off the ignition
see KESSY 118
Switching on the ignition
see KESSY 118

T

Taking care of the vehicle
Natural leather 199
Seat belts 200
Taking care of your vehicle 193
Automatic car wash system 193
Cavity protection 197
Chrome parts 196
Cleaning the wheels 197
Decorative films 196
Door lock cylinders 197
Headlight lenses 197
High-pressure cleaner 194
Plastic parts 195
Polishing the paintwork 195
Rubber seals 195
Taking care of the interior 198
Taking care of your vehicle exterior 194
Washing 193
Washing by hand 193
Wash system 193
Wax treatment 195
Taking care of your vehicles
Fabric covers 200
TCS
Operation 133
Warning light 17
Technical data 254
Tiptronic 123
Tools 228
TOP TETHER 192
Towing 236
Towing a trailer 164
Towing device
Description 164
Drawbar load 164
Use and care 167
Towing eye
front 237
Rear 237
Towing protection 40
Traction Control System (TCS) 133
Traffic sign recognition 161
Function 161
Information messages 162
Traffic Sign Recognition
Notifications and settings 162
Traffic signs
see Traffic sign recognition 161
Trailer 164, 167
13-pin power socket 168
driving with a trailer 168
loading 167
Safety eye 168
Trailer stabilisation 169
Transport
Luggage compartment 85
Roof rack system 98
Transporting children safely 188
Turn signal 53
Turn signal system
Warning light 19
Type plate 254

Tyre control display
Calibration 223
Tyre inflation pressure
Warning light 18
Tyre load-bearing capacity
see Wheels 222
Tyre repair
Check pressure 234
Preparations 233
Sealing and inflating the tyre 234
Tyres 220
Inflation pressure 221
New 222
See Wheels 222
Sizes 221
Tyre wear indicator 221

U

Underbody protection 198
Unlock
Car key 33
Remote Control 34
Unlocking
Individual settings 36
KESSY 35
Key 33
Unlocking and locking 32
Unlocking and locking the steering
see KESSY 117
Useful equipment 74
12-volt power outlet 79
230-volt power socket 83
Ashtray 78
Car park ticket holder 75
Cigarette lighter 78
Clothes hook 82
Cup holders 77
Glasses storage box 80
Holder for reflective vest 76
Map pockets on the front seats 82
Multimedia holder 79
Removable ski bag 84
Seat backrest with long-cargo channel 84
Storage compartment in rear centre console 82
Storage compartment in the front centre console 77
Storage compartment on the driver's side 75
Storage compartment on the passenger side 81
Storage compartments in the doors 76
Storage compartment under the front armrest 80
Storage compartment under the passenger seat 81
Using the selector lever 122

V

Variable loading floor 94
Dividing the luggage compartment 96
Folding up 96
Position change 95
Vehicle battery
Automatic load deactivation 219
Charge level indicator 12
charging 218
Checking the electrolyte level 217
Cover 217
Disconnecting and reconnecting 218
Operation in winter 217
replacing 218
Safety instructions 215
Warning icon 21
Vehicle care
Alcantara 199
Artificial leather 199
Cloths 199
Vehicle condition
see Auto-check control 13
Vehicle data sticker 254
Vehicle dimensions 256
Vehicle height 256
vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) 254
Vehicle length 256
Vehicle tool kit 228
Vehicle width 256
Vest
Holder for reflective vest 76
Visibility 60
Visors
see Sun screen 61
see Sun visors 61

W

Warning at excessive speeds 31
Warning icons 20
Warning lights 14
Warning symbols
see Warning lights 14
see Warning symbols 20
Warning triangle 227
Washing 193
Automatic car wash system 193
by hand 193
Chrome parts 196
High-pressure cleaner 194
Water
Driving through 130
Wax treatment
See Taking care of your vehicle 195
Weights 254
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolt 232
Caps 225
Loosening and tightening 231
Wheel rims 220
Wheels
Bolts 225
Changing 229
Full trim 225
General information 220
Load index 222
Low-profile tyres 223
Replacing wheels 221

Service life of tyres 221
Snow chains 226
Spare wheel 224
Speed symbol 223
Storing wheels 221
Tyre pressure 221
Tyre sizes 221
Tyre wear indicator 221
Winter tyres 226
Window convenience operation 46
Windows
De-icing 196
See Electrical power windows 44
Window wiper
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 242
Windscreen
Heater 60
Windscreen washer fluid
Checking 209
Replenishing 209
Warning icon 23
Winter 209
Windscreen washers
Windscreen washers 63
Windscreen washer system 209
Windscreen wipers
Operating 63
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 241
Windscreen washer fluid 209
Windscreen wipers and washers 62
Winter operation 226
Snow chains 226
Winter tyres 226
Winter tyres
See Wheels 226

X

XDS 134

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or is only offered in certain markets. Information is provided by ŠKODA partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2013

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Andriod systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review

Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

› Navigation through the **list of content**
› Classical **reading page by page**
› **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
› **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

Minimisation of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions
- Start-stop system*
- Recovery*
- Indication of recommended gear*

Weight reduction
- Optimisation of high-strength panels, reduction of thickness in panels and other materials
- Replacement of spare wheel with tyre repair kit

Reduction of energy consumption
- Use of energy-saving electromechanical steering instead of hydraulic type
- Optimisation of efficiency of generators
- Optimisation of operating consumption and electrical current consumption

Optimisation of aerodynamic- and rolling resistance
- Additional aerodynamic spoilers*
- Additional covers at rack (CD covers)*
- Optimised cooling (input grid, additional seal)*
- Reduction by 15 mm* with frame
- Ro-Wi tyres (wheels with low rolling resistance)*

Recyclability
- All models currently in production homologised in conformity with the requirements for recyclability (EU Directive 2005/64/EC)
- Use of recyclable, environmentally-friendly materials
- Use of recycled materials with the parameters of the new material preferred
- Labelling of materials for the purpose of making sorting easy

* realised in the GreenLine series

The green seal represents ŠKODA AUTO commitment to environmentally responsible behaviour. It expresses responsible engagement towards the environment and sustainable development.

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked ♻ below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Octavia anglicky 05.2013
S65.5610.07.20
5E0 012 003 CR